

# NEW TESTAMENT WORD DEFINITIONS

Please see [ljc1611kjv.com](http://ljc1611kjv.com) for detailed studies and Bible references which support the definitions found in this dictionary.

I have researched definitions in several dictionaries and found doctrinal error in every dictionary when it comes to the true meaning of words in “the word of God”. There are several reasons for this.

- Most people fail to realize that “the word of God” belongs to God and it tells us exactly what God will use when He judges us. Many people believe that God will accept the changes that their religion specifies, even if they have not thought it through. Without realizing it, many religious people, of today, are like the Pharisees and believe that the doctrinal errors of their religion correct “the word of God” instead of accepting the truth that “the word of God” is to correct the doctrinal errors of their religion.
- Many people have been taught that there are several meanings for words. That is false, especially when applied to “the word of God” and leads to many doctrinal errors and to people accepting “doctrines from devils” as true. Most people understand that “there is one interpretation and many applications” when it comes to “the word of God”. However, few think about what that requires for finding the true definition of Bible words. There can be only one definition (interpretation) and many applications. This means that they are not the same and that anyone who refuses to accept the difference is not “rightly dividing the word of truth” (**2 Timothy 2:15**). Thus, people can find that an application works many places within “the word of God”, but not every place. Unless the accepted definition works every place, it is a wrong definition. They are using one of the many applications as the single definition and it is absolutely true that their application will not fit within the context of at least one Bible reference. When people find this, and refuse to let “the word of God” correct their doctrine, they claim that there are errors or conflicts in “the word of God”. In pride, they claim that they personally are more accurate than God and than “the word of God”.
- These wrong definitions lead to many doctrinal errors and many people will believe that they are saved when they are not truly so and they will hear: “And then will I profess unto them, I never knew you: depart from me, ye that work iniquity.” (**Matthew 7:23**).
- Most dictionaries are dealing with current usage of words and applications in current usage. The true “word of God” does not change. Therefore, when the current usage of words changes, that

usage moves away from the true meaning of words in “the word of God”. For this reason, the definitions found in many dictionaries do not truly apply to “the word of God” and can lead to doctrinal error. That is why the Webster’s 1828 produces the least number of doctrinal errors, as compared to other dictionaries, when the definitions in it are used for the Bible. It was written closest in time to when the 1611- KJV was written and, therefore, has the least number of changes from the true meanings found in “the word of God”.

- Most dictionaries present several applications of a word and either skip the single root meaning of the word or present that definition in a way that people either ignore it or believe that it is just another application. Therefore, many people believe that they can choose whichever application best fits their own beliefs, or the religious beliefs that they have been taught. And, when they are shown that their chosen application does not match what is found somewhere in “the word of God”, they believe that there is an error in “the word of God” instead of accepting that they used the wrong method for finding the true definition of a Bible word.
- Every “Bible Dictionary” that I have found defined words to support the religious training of the author. That is why you have different definitions for the same word when you compare definitions from “Bible Dictionaries”. However, just like the Pharisees did not truly correct “the word of God”, so also can not Bible dictionaries correct “the word of God”.
- Most people understand that “there is one interpretation and many applications’ when it comes to “the word of God”. However, few think about what that requires for finding the true definition of Bible words. God does not change (**Malachi 3:6; Hebrews 13:8**). That means that when God said a word, He attached a meaning to that word. He would have to change if he attached another word to that same meaning or if He attached another meaning to an established word. As a result:
  - No two words in “the word of God” can have the same meaning.
  - A given word, in “the word of God”, can have only one meaning. The only way to find that single definition is to study every place where it is used with consideration of context. What is the same in every place is the single definition and what varies are the multiple applications.
  - Since people wrongly claim that two, or more, Bible words have the same definition, every one of those words must be completely studied and shown to be different in order to truly provide the true definition from “the word of God”.
  - There are over 8,000 occurrences of the word “Lord”, in “the word of God”. Truly putting the time to properly study that word, for the single definition, requires too much time and effort for most people to do what is required. Yet, because of pride, they will claim to be a greater authority than someone who does the required study and publishes the result.
- What is required in order to truly prove a Bible truth is too much work for most people to do. In addition, reading such a proof can be overwhelming for most people. Therefore, while [ljc1611kjv.com](http://ljc1611kjv.com) has the required proof for the word definitions presented here, only the simplified definitions are presented in this book. If someone questions or challenges any definition presented here, they can then look at the proof, presented at [ljc1611kjv.com](http://ljc1611kjv.com), and disprove what is there while trying to present an alternative with greater evidence.
- Every word in this dictionary has been researched for every usage in the New Testament if not in the entire Bible. In some cases, there is a note explaining the common definition and the application in every Bible reference. In some cases, only the single definition is presented. However, even if only the results of the study are published, rest assured that the required study was done.

If anyone has done the required research to truly show an error in this dictionary, please email that published evidence to: [Webmaster@LJC1611KJV.com](mailto:Webmaster@LJC1611KJV.com). Please do not tell me about your religious beliefs because they can not correct the true “word of God”. Only send evidence which is based upon what is truly in “the word of God” and with the specification of how you generated that proof and why you believe your method is more accurate than studying every usage and finding what is the same in every usage.

# A

**A-** One of many. Must be distinguished from the word the.

**Aaron-** Brother of Moses, first priest, and is sometimes used as an example of the Levitical priesthood.

**Abaddon / Apollyon-** devil serving Satan during “great tribulation”

**Abase-** humbled, reduced to low estate

**Abel-** He was the second person born and the first recorded to offer a righteous sacrifice. His name is also used, symbolically, for the first example of true Biblical faith. The Old Testament references outside of Genesis speak of a place and not the person. In addition, Hebrews 12:24 tells us that “the blood of sprinkling (from Jesus Christ)...speaketh better things than that of Abel”.

**Abhor-** To hate extremely, or with contempt; to loathe, detest or abominate

**Abide-** To continue; to be; to dwell, rest, continue, stand firm, or be stationary for anytime indefinitely.

**Ability-** Physical power, whether bodily or mental; skill in arts or science.

**Able-** Having physical power or strength to perform

**Abode-** Past- tense form of abide.

**Abolish-** annulled; repealed; abrogated, or destroyed

**Abomination-** Ongoing sinful wickedness; what is unfit to be presented in the service of God

**Abound-** allowed to expand without limit

**Abraham-** father of the faithful

**Abroad-** Beyond the limits of a designated area

**absent / absence-** Not present; at such a distance as to prevent communication

**abstain-** a restraint upon the passions or appetites; to refrain from indulgence

**abundant-** Plentiful; in great quantity; fully sufficient

**abuse-** To use ill; to maltreat; to misuse; to use with bad motives or to wrong purposes

**accept-** Kindly received; regarded; agreed to; understood

**acceptable-** that may be received with pleasure

**access-** coming to; near approach; admittance; admission

**accomplish-** to complete; to finish entirely

**accord-** Agreeing; harmonizing; when two notes are in a music chord, they move together, up or down, to the next note

**according to works-** reward or punishment matching spiritual works

**accompany-** to go with or attend as a companion or associate on a journey

**account-** >A computation of debts and credits, or a general statement of particular sums

**accuse-** to charge with, or declare to have committed a crime

**accursed-** See the definition of curse. The difference between cursed and accursed is that something which is accursed has that state permanently and where a curse can be removed. Further, it spreads to everything associated with it like leprosy did.

**Achaia-** A place where Paul ministered. This region included Corinth and had problems with Jews leading saved people into doctrinal error

**Acknowledge-** To own, avow or admit to be true, by a declaration of assent; as To acknowledge the being of a God

**Adam-** The first man

**Add-** The mathematical function. Ignoring either side of the word “add” changes what is said into doctrinal error

**Added-** Past tense form of the word “add”

**Adjure-** To bind by oath, solemnly entreat

**Administration-** The act of direction; management; government of public affairs; the conducting of any office or employment

**Administer**- Execute; manage; govern; afford; give; dispense

**admiration**- Wonder mingled with pleasing emotions; a compound emotion excited by something novel, rare, great, or excellent; applied to persons and their works

**admonish**- To teach, warn; To warn or notify of a fault; to reprove with mildness

**ado**- Bustle; trouble; labor; difficulty

**adoption**- the taking and treating of a stranger as one's own child

**adorn**- to make beautiful; to add to beauty by dress; to deck with external ornaments

**Adultery** – violating a covenant agreement enforce by God.

**Advantage**- Any state, condition, or circumstance, favorable to success, prosperity, interest, or reputation

**Adventure**- To risk, or hazard; to put in the power of unforeseen events

**Adversaries / Adversary**- An enemy or foe; one who has enmity at heart. Satan is our main spiritual adversary

**Adversity**- An event, or series of events, which oppose success or desire; misfortune; calamity; affliction; distress; state of unhappiness

**advice / advise**- To give counsel to; to offer an opinion, as worthy or expedient to be followed

**advocate**- one who pleads the cause of another in a court of law

**affairs**- Business of any kind; that which is done, or is to be done; a word of very indefinite and indefinable signification

**AFFECT** – Cause a change. Please also see effect as these two are often confused.

**AFFECTIONS** – Good emotions makes you feel good

**Afflictions**- The cause of continued pain of body or mind, as sickness, losses, calamity, adversity, persecution

**Affirm**- To assert positively; to tell with confidence; to aver; to declare the existence of something; to maintain as true; opposed to deny

**Affright**- Sudden or great fear; terror; also, the cause of terror; a frightful object. Also see the definitions of afraid and for fear.

**Aforetime**- afore and time. In time past; in a former time.

**Afraid**- Impressed with fear or apprehension; fearful. This word expresses a less degree of fear than terrified or frightened. Also see the definition of fear.

**after the flesh**- Those people who are “in the flesh” are lost while those people who “walk after the flesh” are saved carnal people.

**Agar / Hagar**- A servant of Abraham and handmaiden of Sarah Given by Sarah to Abraham to be his wife

**age (singular)**- the period of someone's life along with the expected the maturity that should come from life experiences

**ages**- No dictionary defines "ages" (plural). It is only taught as a doctrine by commentators which claim things which do not agree with what the "word of God" actually says. The usage of this word, in the " word of God " is: 'Uncountable number of years of time in multiple thousands of years'. There is a lot of doctrinal error taught about "ages". Please be sure to stick to what is actually said within the context of where you find forms of this word.

**agree**- Concord; harmony; conformity

**air** - the atmosphere, as opposed to the higher regions of the sky (1Th 4:17; Re 9:2; 16:17)

**alabaster**- These boxes were made from a stone found near Alabastron in Egypt

**alas**- An exclamation expressive of sorrow, grief, pity, concern, or apprehension of evil

**Alien** – Having a different citizenship

**Alienated**- To estrange; to withdraw, as the affections; to make indifferent or averse, where love or friendship before subsisted

**all Israel shall be saved**- will happen when our Lord Jesus Christ returns to rule this world

**Allegory**- A figurative sentence or discourse, in which the principal subject is described by another subject resembling it in its properties and circumstances. The principal subject is thus kept out of view, and we are left

to collect the intentions of the writer or speaker, by the resemblance of the secondary to the primary subject.

**Alleluia**- Praise ye Jehovah

**Allow**- To grant, give or yield

**Almighty**- attribute of God recognizing His might above all other beings

**Alms**- charitable giving associated with religion

**Aloes**- a fragrant plant used for perfume and embalming

**Alone**- Separately; by itself

**Altar**- any structure of earth (Ex 20:24) or unwrought stone (Ex 20:25) on which sacrifices were offered. Also used symbolically for a heart attitude of dedicating a life to the service of God. Used in Heb 13:10 for the sacrifice offered upon it--the sacrifice Christ offered

**Alter**- To make some change in; to make different in some particular; to vary in some degree, without an entire change

**Alpha**- The first and last letters of the Greek alphabet, hence, symbolically, "beginning and end"; in Revelation "The Eternal One" in Re 1:8.

**always / always**- Perpetually; throughout all time; as, God is always the same. 2. Continually; without variation. the word "always" (plural) is used for several never ending continuances.

**amazed / amazement**- Astonished; confounded with fear, surprise or wonder.

**ambassador**- one who goes on an errand. This is the name used by the apostle as designating those who are appointed by God to declare his will. To do injury to an ambassador was to insult the king who sent him.

**Amen**- Doubles what was said before the word and fulfills the requirement of something being said twice to make it part of the law of God. One title of our "Lord Jesus Christ" is "the Amen".

**Amend**- to correct; to reform; to rectify by expunging a mistake; as, to amend a law.

**Amiss**- that which is improper or harmful (Lu 23:41; Ac 28:6), or that which is evil in the sense of a disaster, then to that which is wicked, morally wrong. this latter is the use of it in Jas 4:3. the purpose of the prayer is evil, it is therefore amiss and cannot be granted.

**Anchor**- used to hold a ship and keep it from drifting into danger.

**Ancle / Ankle**- The joint which connects the leg bone to the foot or hoof.

**And** – The mathematical function of addition. Dropping either side of this word changes the message that it is in.

**Andrew**- the apostles of our Lord and was the brother of Simon Peter. Almost every place that he is mentioned in the Bible he is bringing someone to Jesus.

**Angel**- messenger from God or servant of God.

**Archangel**- the prince of the angels.

**Anger**- A violent passion of the mind excited by a real or supposed injury; usually accompanied with a propensity to take vengeance, or to obtain satisfaction from the offending party.

**Anguish**- Extreme pain, either of body or mind. As bodily pain, it may differ from agony, which is such distress of the whole body as to cause contortion, whereas anguish may be a local pain as of an ulcer, or gout.

**Annas**- Annas was high priest A.D. 7- 14.

**Anoint**- To pour oil upon; to smear or rub over with oil or unctuous substances. Used symbolically to represent being covered by God's "Holy Ghost".

**Anon**- immediately.

**Answer**- To speak in return to a call or question, or to a speech, declaration or argument of another person.

**Anti** – Against

**Anti Christ** – Against Christ.

**Antichrist**- a preacher promising the blessings of Christ received a different way. True Biblical "antichrists" are only in 1John and 2John and not in Revelation.

**Antioch in Syria**- the city where the church which sent out Paul as their missionary was located. All doctrine is claimed to originate from Antioch of Syria or Alexandria of Egypt. Alexandria of Egypt was the center of worldly religion and the so-called Christians from there formed the start of Islam.

**Apart**- Separately; at a distance; in a state of separation, as to place.

**Apostle** – has a power like an ambassador, highest human authority w/in the church below Christ

**Apostles, twelve (12)**- Simon, who is called Peter; Andrew his brother; James the son of Zebedee; John his brother; Philip; Bartholomew; Thomas; Matthew the publican who was also the son of Alphaeus; James the son of Alphaeus; Lebbeaus, whose is also called the brother of James and Judas; Simon the Canaanite; and Judas Iscariot.

**Apollos**- He became a powerful preacher of God's truth after his doctrine was corrected by Aquila and Priscilla.

**Apparel**- clothing.

**Appeal**- a reference of any case from an inferior to a superior court.

**Appear**- To come or be in sight; to be in view; to be visible.

**Appease** - To make quiet; to calm; to reduce to a state of peace; to still; to pacify.

**Appoint**- To fix; to settle; to establish; to make fast. To constitute, ordain, or fix by decree, order or decision.

**Apprehend**- Taken; seized; arrested; conceived; understood; feared.

**Approach**- To come or go near, in place; to draw near; to advance nearer.

**Approve**- To entertain a favorable opinion concerning. The Biblical and archaic use conveys a much stronger meaning and is equivalent to its use in legal formalities of today, "to approve a bill".

**Aprons**- denotes the belt or half- girdle worn by artisans and servants round the waist for the purpose of preserving the clothing from injury.

**Apt**- Fit; suitable; as, he used very apt metaphors.

**Aquila and Priscilla**- are a married couple (Jews) who Paul met when he first went to Corinth (Acts 18) and established a church there. They helped to start three churches and corrected the doctrine of Apollos.

**Arabia**- Is a country of Western Asia, lying south and east of Judea.

**Ark**- A chest or box of various size used to protect what is inside. The ark of Noah was considerably larger than the ark that Moses was put into and larger than the Ark of God.

**Aristarchus**- A believer who traveled with Paul. From Thessalonica of Macedonia.

**Are** – On going verb of existence. Plural form of the word is.

**Arise**- To ascend, mount up or move to a higher place; as, vapors arise from humid places.

**Arm**- part of the body which is used symbolically for power.

**Armor / Armour**- Things used to protect a person who goes to a battle.

**army / armies**- soldiers grouped together to do war.

**Array**- Set in order, or in lines; arranged in order for attack or defense; dressed; adorned by dress; impaneled, as a jury; enveloped.

**Ascend**- To move upwards; to mount; to go up; to rise, whether in air or water, or upon a material object.

**arose**- The past tense of the verb, to arise.

**As**- In the same way.

**Ashamed**- effected by shame; abashed or confused by guilt or a conviction of some criminal action or indecorous conduct, or by the exposure of some gross errors or misconduct, which the person is conscious must be wrong, and which tends to impair his honor or reputation.

**Asher / Aser**- Eighth son of Jacob by Zilpah, Leah's handmaid. The signification of the name is 'happy'.

**Ashes**- The residue of something burned. Symbolically, the ashes of a red heifer burned entire (Nu 19:5) when sprinkled on the unclean made them ceremonially clean (Heb 9:13). To cover the head with ashes was a token of self- abhorrence and humiliation (2Sa 13:19; Es 4:3; Jer 6:26, etc.). To feed on ashes (Isa 44:20), means to seek that which will prove to be vain and unsatisfactory, and hence it denotes the unsatisfactory nature of idol- worship. (Comp. Ho 12:1).

**Asia**- An area of the world where Paul started churches. While these people in Asia were saved through the ministry of Paul, they were willing to forsake him and choose religion which excused their sin.

**Aside**- Distinct from others, privately, to withdraw.

**Ask**- To inquire, to seek for counsel, to request.

**Ass-** donkey. Many people of today claim to be more spiritual than God because they refuse to use the Biblical word which God uses.

**Assemble-** collect together into a body; congregate.

**Assembly-** A congregation or religious society convened.

**Assurance-** The act of making a declaration in terms that furnish ground of confidence. True assurance comes only from God through our ongoing personal relationship with Jesus Christ.

**Assault-** n attack or violent onset, whether by an individual, a company, or an army.

**Assay-** Examine; test; prove by experiment.

**Assure / Assuredly-** Certainly; indubitably. To make certain; to give confidence by a promise, declaration, or other evidence.

**Astonish-** Amaze; confound with fear, surprise, or admiration.

**Astray-** Out of the right way or proper place, both in a literal and figurative sense. In morals and religion, it signifies wandering from the path of rectitude, from duty and happiness.

**asps / adder-** a type of poisonous snake. Also called an adder.

**Asunder-** Apart; into parts; separately; in a divided state.

**at hand-** it will happen very soon.

**Attain-** to reach, come to or overtake; as and tango, to touch, reach or strike; that is, to thrust, urge or push to.

**Attendance-** The act of waiting on, or serving.

**Atonement-** appease, propitiate; effect reconciliation with God by some conduct, or course of action. However, there is more to the doctrine than this simple definition provides.

**Audience-** Present and listening. "in the audience of" is equal to "in the presence of," or "while they listened."

**Austere-** Picturing God's righteousness as harsh, unfeeling, partial, unjust, forbidding.

**Author-** one who brings or causes to come forth.

**Authority-** legal power, or a right to command or to act; as the authority of a prince over subjects, and of parents over children.

**AUTONOMY** – self governed

**Avail-** To be of use, or advantage; to answer the purpose.

**Avenge-** To take satisfaction for an injury by punishing the injuring party; to vindicate by inflicting pain or evil on the wrong doer. Also see **revenge** and **revenger**.

**Avoid-** To shun; to keep at a distance from; that is, literally, to go or be wide from.

**Awake-** To cease to sleep; to come from a state of sleep.

**Aware-** Watchful; vigilant; guarded; but more strictly in modern usage, apprised; expecting an event from information, or probability; as, the general was aware of the enemy's designs.

**Away-** Absent; at a distance.

**axe**— a tool used for felling trees (Isa 10:34) and hewing timber for building.

B

**Babe-** used of children generally (Mt 11:25; 21:16; Lu 10:21; Ro 2:20). It is used also of those who are weak in Christian faith and knowledge (1Co 3:1; Heb 5:13; 1Pe 2:2). In Isa 3:4 the word "babes" refers to a succession of weak and wicked princes who reigned over Judah from the death of Josiah downward to the destruction of Jerusalem.

**Babbling-** Foolish talk. Uttering a succession of murmuring sounds; as a babbling stream.

**Babylon-** The original city was Assyrian, and the name meant "The city of the dispersion of the tribes." In Revelation, it identifies the city which is the center of government joined to religion.

**Backbiter-** One who slanders, calumniates or speaks ill of the absent.

**Bad-** Ill; evil; opposed to good; a word of general use, denoting physical defects and moral faults.

**bade-** This is the past-tense form of the word bid. Also see bid, bidden and forbid.



**Bag**- A sack; a pouch, usually of cloth or leather, used to carry things.

**Balaam**- He sold his service to God for money, power and position. Also, he sold his service to accomplish evil and represents anyone who does the same.

**Balac**- He caused God's people to stray into doctrinal error. He is also a type for anyone who does the same.

**balance / balances**- The emblem of justice (Job 31:6; Ps 62:9; Pr 11:1) the test of truth and honesty. a pair of balances or scales: such are seen on the Egyptian monuments, with the weights in one scale and the article to be weighed in the other.

**Band**- Any narrow ligament with which a thing is bound. To unite; to associate; to confederate for some common purpose.

**Bank**- Any steep acclivity, whether rising from a river, a lake, or the sea, or forming the side of a ravine, or the steep side of a hillock on a plain This is literally a table, and mostly so translated, and which could be used for any purpose. Lu 19:23. In Mt 25:27 a kindred word is translated 'exchangers:' both passages imply that there were in those days, as now, those who received and lent money on interest'.

**Baptized** – Identify with.

**Barabbas**- One described as a 'robber' in Joh 18:40; 'a notable prisoner' in Mt 27:16- 26: he had made an insurrection and had committed murder. Mr 15:7- 15. Yet the Jews, led by the chief priests and elders, requested the release of this man rather than the release of the Lord Jesus

**Barbarian**- An uncivilized person. A cruel, savage, brutal man; one destitute of pity or humanity.

**Bare**- to expose completely with no cover nor obscuring of view.

**Barley**- A grain that was used by the poorest people to make bread.

**Barn**- a storehouse (De 28:8; Job 39:12; Hag 2:19) for grain, which was usually under ground, although also sometimes above ground (Lu 12:18)'.  
**Barnabas**- His name meant "peacemaker". He was the first pastor of the church in Antioch and went with Paul on his first missionary journey.

**Barnabas**- His name meant "peacemaker". He was the first pastor of the church in Antioch and went with Paul on his first missionary journey.

**Barren**- Not producing young, or offspring.

**Bartholomew**- son of Tolmai, one of the twelve apostles (Mt 10:3; Ac 1:13); generally supposed to have been the same as Nathanael. He was one of the disciples to whom our Lord appeared at the Sea of Tiberias after his resurrection (Joh 21:2). He was also a witness of the Ascension (Ac 1:4,12- 13). He was an "Israelite indeed" (Joh 1:47)'.  
**Base**- low, humble, not necessarily worthless or wicked.

**Base**- low, humble, not necessarily worthless or wicked.

**basin / bason**- (1) A trough or laver (Heb. aggan') for washing (Ex 24:6); rendered also "goblet" (Song 7:2) and "cups" (Isa 22:24). (2.) A covered dish or urn (Heb. k'for) among the vessels of the temple (1Ch 28:17; Ezr 1:10; 8:27).

**Basket**- A container made from weaving branches or similar things together.

**Bastard**- Illegitimate offspring. Used symbolically for lost church members.

**Battle**- A fight, or encounter between enemies, or opposing armies; an engagement.

**Beam**- a weaver's frame or principal beam; in Hab 2:11, a crossbeam or girder; 2Ki 6:2,5, a cross- piece or rafter of a house; 1Ki 7:6, an architectural ornament as a projecting step or molding; Eze 41:25, a thick plank. In the New Testament the word occurs only in Mt 7:3- 4,5, and Lu 6:41- 42, where it means (Gr. dokos) a large piece of wood used for building purposes, as contrasted with "mote" (Gr. karpfos), a small piece or mere splinter. "Mote" and "beam" became proverbial for little and great faults.

**bear (animal)**- The Syrian bear, Ursus syriacus, which is without doubt the animal mentioned in the Bible, is still found on the higher mountains of Palestine. During the summer months these bears keep to the snowy parts of Lebanon, but descend in winter to the villages and Gardens. It is probable also that at this period in former days they extended their visits to other parts of Palestine.

**bear (verb)**- to carry a load over a period of time.

**Beast**- Any animal that is not man. Sometimes it means quadrupeds, and not creeping things.

**Beat**- To strike repeatedly; to lay on repeated blows, with a stick, with the hand or fist, or with any instrument, and for any cause, just or unjust, or for punishment.

**Beaten**- Struck; dashed against; pressed or laid down; hammered; pounded; vanquished; make smooth by treading; worn by use; tracked'

**Beautiful**- An assemblage of graces, or an assemblage of properties in the form of the person or any other object, which pleases the eye. In the person, due proportion or symmetry of parts constitutes the most essential property to which we annex the term beauty.

**Because**- provides an effect where the cause is in the past.

**Beckon**- To make a significant sign to.

**Bed**- for rest at night (Ex 8:3; 1Sa 19:13,15- 16, etc.); during sickness (Ge 47:31; 48:2; 49:33, etc.); as a sofa for rest (1Sa 28:23; Am 3:12).

**Beelzebub**- (Gr. form Beel'zebul), the name given to Satan, and found only in the New Testament (Mt 10:25; 12:24,27; Mr 3:22). It is probably the same as Baalzebub (q.v.), the god of Ekron, meaning "the lord of flies," or, as others think, "the lord of dung," or "the dung- god."

**beg / beggar**- That the poor existed among the Hebrews we have abundant evidence (Ex 23:11; De 15:11), but there is no mention of beggars properly so called in the Old Testament. The poor were provided for by the law of Moses (Le 19:10; De 12:12; 14:29). It is predicted of the seed of the wicked that they shall be beggars (Ps 37:25; 109:10).

In the New Testament we find not seldom mention made of beggars (Mr 10:46; Lu 16:20- 21; Ac 3:2), yet there is no mention of such a class as vagrant beggars, so numerous in the East. "Beggary," in Ga 4:9, means worthless.

**begat / beget**- To procreate, as a father or sire; to generate; as, to beget a son. 2. To produce, as an effect; to cause to exist; to generate; as, luxury begets vice. Also see begotten.

**Beginning**- First entering upon; commencing; giving rise or original; taking rise or origin.

**Begotten**- Procreated; generated. Also see begat / begot.

**begotten son, only**- The only son that God created through procreation. God provide physical life at conception and provide the character after birth.

**Beguile**- To delude; to deceive; to impose on by artifice or craft.

**Behavior / Behaviour**- Manner of behaving.

**Beheaded**- To cut off the head; to sever the head from the body, with a cutting instrument; appropriately used of the execution of men for crimes.

**Behold**- To fix the eyes upon; to observe with care. Also see hold.

**Behoved**- was necessary.

**Belial**- As a noun, unprofitableness; wickedness. As an adjective, worthless; wicked. In a collective sense, wicked men. Also used to identify Satan.

**belief, non- saving**- All true Biblical belief results in action based upon that belief. This is a mental claim which produces no Godly change in the believer.

**belief (true) changes life**- See the Detailed Note for Romans 10:14 at ljc1611kiv.com.

**belief (true) requires us to do**- See the Detailed Note for Romans 4:23- 25 at ljc1611kiv.com.

**Believe** – what you are convinced is true and that belief causes action. To credit upon the authority or testimony of another; to be persuaded of the truth of something upon the declaration of another, or upon evidence furnished by reasons, arguments, and deductions of the mind, or by other circumstances, than personal knowledge. When we believe upon the authority of another, we always put confidence in his veracity.

**Believth**– A lifestyle of believing.

**believe in Jesus / Christ**- See the Detailed Note for Romans 3:26- LJC at ljc1611kiv.com.

**believe on / believe in**- The difference between "believe on" and "believe in" is that "believe on" means 'trust in the power and authority represented by the name' while "believe in" means 'trust in the person'.

**Belly**- The part of the body used to process food. This word is also used symbolically for the seat of carnal affections.

**Beloved**- be and loved, from love. Greatly loved; dear to the heart.

**beloved Son**- We see the phrase beloved Son applied to Jesus in: Matthew 3:17; Matthew 17:5; Mark 1:11; Mark 9:7; Luke 3:22; Luke 9:35; Luke 20:13 and John 8:18.

**Benefit**- An act of kindness; a favor conferred.

**Beneath**- Under; lower in place, with something directly over or on, as to place a cushion beneath one;

often with the sense of pressure or oppression, as to sink beneath a burden, in a literal sense.

**Benjamin**- A son of Jacob and the father of one of the tribes of Jews. The contrast between the warlike character of the tribe and the peaceful image of its progenitor comes out in many scattered notices.

**Beseech**- To entreat; to supplicate; to implore; to ask or pray with urgency.

**Besought**- Past- tense of beseech.

**Beside**- be and side, by the side.

**Bestow**- give with no strings attached.

**Bethlehem**- Birth place of Jesus which fulfilled prophecy.

**Bethany**- Associated with the closing days of the Lord Jesus, the home of the family whom He loved, Mary, Martha, and Lazarus. Also, where He raised Lazarus from the dead; from whence He made His triumphal entry into Jerusalem; His nightly abode each of the six nights preceding His betrayal; where at the house of Simon the leper He was anointed by Mary (Mr 14:3); and where, most of all, we are introduced to the home circle of His private life.

**Bethsaida**- a town from whence came Philip, Andrew, and Peter, Joh 1:44; 12:21; and against which the Lord pronounced a 'woe' because it had not repented at His mighty works. Mt 11:21; Lu 10:13.

**Betray**- To deliver into the hands of an enemy by treachery or fraud, in violation of trust.

**Bewail**- To express deep sorrow; lament. Le 10:6; Jer 4:31.

**Beware**- Literally, to restrain or guard one's self from. Hence, to regard with caution.

**Bewitched**- Fascinated; charmed, using means of a devil.

**Bewray**- To disclose perfidiously; to betray; to show or make visible. Thy speech bewrayeth thee. Matt.23. This word is nearly antiquated.

**bid** - To ask; to request; to invite. Also see bade and bidden, and forbid.

**Bidden**- Past- tense form of bid. Also see bid, bade and forbidden.

**Bier**- A light frame or couch on which the dead could be carried. 2Sa 3:31.

**Bind**- To tie together, or confine with a cord, or anything that is flexible; to fasten as with a band, fillet or ligature.

**Bill**- a hand written legal document.

**Bird**- Any fowl or flying animal including even winged insects, though mostly used of what we think are birds.

**birthright** - birth and right. Any right or privilege, to which a person is entitled by birth, such as an estate descendible by law to an heir, or civil liberty under a free constitution. Esau, for a morsel, sold his birthright. Heb.12. It may be used in the sense of primogeniture, or the privilege of the first born, but is applicable to any right which results from descent.

**Bible Knowledge** – Is getting what the Bible says into your brain.

**BISHOP** – PASTOR of pastors.

**Bite**- To break or crush with the teeth, as in eating; to pierce with the teeth, as a serpent; to seize with the teeth, as a dog.

**bitter / bitterly**- Bitterness is symbolical of affliction, misery, and servitude (Ex 1:14; Ru 1:20; Jer 9:15).

**Bitterness**- Extreme enmity, grudge, hatred; or rather an excessive degree or implacableness of passions and emotions; as the bitterness of anger. Eph.4.

**black / blackness**- The color of back. Also used, symbolically, for darkness; atrociousness or enormity in wickedness.

**Blameless**- Without fault; innocent; guiltless; not meriting censure. A bishop then must be blameless. 1 Tim.3.

**Blasphemy**- Speaking evil of God.

**Blemish**- imperfection or bodily deformity excluding men from the priesthood, and rendering animals unfit to be offered in sacrifice (Le 21:17- 23; 22:19- 25).

**Bless**- Receiving, or wishing another to receive, the spiritual good from God which produces spiritual joy even while it might make us less happy in the flesh.

**Blew**- The past-tense form of the word blow.

**Blind**- Lack of sight. Spiritual blindness denotes ignorance as to spiritual things (Isa 6:10; 42:18- 19; Mt 15:14; Eph 4:18).

**Blood**- The fluid which circulates through the arteries and veins of the human body, and of other animals, which is essential to the preservation of life.

**blood of Christ**- What Jesus Christ shed to give us forgiveness of sins and the New Testament.

**Blot**- a stain or reproach (Job 31:7; Pr 9:7). To blot out sin is to forgive it (Ps 51:1,9; Isa 44:22; Ac 3:19). Christ's blotting out the handwriting of ordinances was his fulfilling the law in our behalf (Col 2:14).

**Blow**- Used with reference to natural and man-made wind for "to breathe". The word blew is the past- tense form of the word blow.

**Boast**- To brag, or vaunt one's self; to make an ostentatious display, in speech, of one's own worth, property, or actions.

**Boasters**- a person who boasts.

**Body**- The frame of an animal; the material substance of an animal, in distinction from the living principal of beasts, and the soul of man. Used symbolically for the framework for sin including all parts of it.

**body is of Christ**- local church/

**bold**- Daring; courageous; brave; intrepid; fearless; applied to men or other animals. Requiring courage in the execution.

**Bond / Bondage**- Slavery or involuntary servitude; captivity; imprisonment; restraint of a person's liberty by compulsion.

**Bone**- The framework of the body. Breaking them expresses overwhelming sorrow, which prostrates body and mind (Isa 38:13).

**Book**- A general name of every literary composition which is printed; but appropriately, a printed composition bound; a volume. The name is given also to any number of written sheets when bound or sewed together, and to a volume of blank paper, intended for any species of writing, as for memorandums, for accounts, or receipts. 1. A particular part of a literary composition; a division of a subject in the same volume. 2. A volume or collection of sheets in which accounts are kept; a register of debts and credits, receipts and expenditures.

**book of law**- While this phrase was originally used for the first five (5) books written by Moses, it has been expanded to include all of the Old Testament.

**book of life**- The Heavenly record of the names of all saved.

**Border**- The outer edge of anything; the extreme part or surrounding line; the confine or exterior limit of a country, or of any region or tract of land; the exterior part or edge of a garment.

**Born**- Brought out into the world. Life starts at conception, not at birth. Spiritually born is having spiritual life recognized by God.

**born of God**- receiving spiritual life which belongs to God.

**Borne**- Carried; conveyed; supported; defrayed.

**Borrow**- To request or demand.

**Bosom**- Used symbolically for the seat of deep affection. To have in one's bosom indicates kindness, secrecy, or intimacy. extreme personal knowledge, love and care.

**bought / buy**- The word bought is the past- tense form of the word buy. To acquire the property, right or title to any thing, by paying a consideration or an equivalent in money.

**Bottle**- The bottles which were used in the time of Jesus, and in that culture, were made from animal skins.

**Bottomless**- We find forms of the word bottomless only in Revelation and only used for the bottomless pit. Webster's 1828 defines the word bottomless as: 'Without a bottom; applied to water, caverns &c., it signified fathomless, whose bottom cannot be found by sounding; as a bottomless abyss or ocean'. The bottomless pit is in the center of the Earth and beings in it are constantly going in a circle and can never find the bottom of it.

**Bound**- Past- tense of bind. As a participle, made fast by a band, or by chains or fetters; obliged by moral ties; confined; restrained.

**Bounty**- Liberality in bestowing gifts and favors; generosity; munificence.

**Bow**- A shortened version of the rainbow and indicates a curved form.

**Bowels**- The soft organs of the body. This word is used, symbolically, for the center of the emotions.

**Box**- A "cruet" or "flask" used to hold perfume.

**Bramble**- a lowly stunted tree with drooping jagged branches, from which project sharp stiff thorns, affording no shade, but only scratching those who touched it; fit emblem of the self important, petty, but mischievous speaker (answering to Abimelech) in Jotham's parable (Jg 9:8- 20), the oldest fable extant.

**Branch**- A small part of a plant which holds leaves and fruit. Also used symbolically for God's people who are part of Him just like a branch is part of the plant which it is attached to.

**Brass**- An alloy of copper and zinc. It is a symbol of insensibility and obstinacy in sin (Isa 48:4; Jer 6:28; Eze 22:18), and of strength (Ps 107:16; Mic 4:13).

**Brawl**- To quarrel noisily and indecently.

**Bread**- The word signifies food in general. Used symbolically as the basic substance of life. Our bodies replace cells in our bodies from what we eat. Therefore, when Jesus said "eat my body", He was symbolically saying: 'let me replace how you live in the flesh'.

**Breadth**- The measure or extent of any plain surface from side to side; a geometrical dimension, which, multiplied into the length, constitutes a surface; as, the length of a table is five feet, and the breadth, three; 5x3=15 feet, the whole surface.

**Break / Brake** - Break and Brake are two spellings of the same word. To part or divide by force and violence.

**Breast**- Signifying the front view of the bust in humans and the corresponding portion of the body in animals.

**Breastplate**- Armor for the breast.

- of righteousness (for Christ), Isa 59:17; (for the Christian's conflict in the heavenlies). Eph 6:14.
- of faith and love (for the wilderness). 1Th 5:8.
- of iron (steeled conscience). Re 9:9.
- of fire, jacinth, and brimstone (dire judgements). Re 9:17.

**Breath**- The air inhaled and expelled in the respiration of animals.

**Brethren**- Spiritually used for God's people: the Jews and the people are saved, baptized and active members of the church.

**Britches**- A garment worn by men, covering the hips and thighs.

**bride**- frequently used in the ordinary sense (Isa 49:18; 61:10, etc.). The relation between Christ and his church is set forth under the figure of that between a bridegroom and bride (Joh 3:29). The church is called "the bride" (Re 21:9; 22:17). Compare parable of the Ten Virgins (Mt 25:1-13).

**Bridegroom**- A title which the Lord applies to Himself. Mt 9:15; 25:1- 10; cf. Joh 3:29. It anticipates the joy of Christ, the marriage- day when He will take to Himself all that for which He suffered so much.

**Bridle**- something which controls.

**bright**- Shining; lucid; luminous; splendid; as a bright sun or star; a bright metal.

**Brightness**- Splendor; luster; glitter. 1. Acuteness, applied to the faculties; sharpness of wit.

**Brimstone**- an inflammable mineral substance found in quantities on the shores of the Dead Sea. This word figuratively denotes destruction or punishment (Job 18:15; Isa 30:33; 34:9; Ps 11:6; Eze 38:22). It is used to express the idea of excruciating torment in Re 14:10; 19:20; 20:10.

**Broad**- Wide; extended in breadth, or from side to side, as distinguished from long, or extended from end to end.

**broke / Broken**- Past-tense for Break / Brake. Parted by violence.

**broken off**- suddenly and permanently separated, often with violence to the thing or person that is separated.

**Brother**- A human male born of the same father and mother. Used spiritually for another male church member.

**Brotherly**- used to modify the words: love, kindness and covenant.

**Bruise**- To crush by beating or pounding with an instrument not edged or pointed.

**Buffet**- being beat up.

**build / built**- Framed and raised; constructed.

**Builder**- The person who does the building.

**Building**- the work and the final product of a work to make something from basic materials.

**Bundle**- A number of things put together.

**Burden**- A load of any kind (Ex 23:5).

**Burial**- The act of burying a deceased person; sepulture; interment; the act of depositing a dead body in the earth, in a tomb or vault, or in the water.

**Buried**- To deposit a deceased person in the grave; to inter a corpse; to entomb.

**Bury**- To deposit a deceased person in the grave; to inter a corpse; to entomb.

**Burn**- The primary sense is, to rage, to act with violent excitement. To consume with fire.

**Bush**- A shrub with branches; a thick shrub; also, a cluster of shrubs.

**Bushel**- A dry measure, containing eight gallons, or four pecks. Please see the note for John 6:7, at [ljc1611kjv.com](http://ljc1611kjv.com) [1kjv.com](http://1kjv.com), for various Biblical measurements.

**Business**- Something that engages a significant amount of our time then we are to pay attention and get it done and get it done right.

**Busybody**- busy and body. A meddling person; one who officiously concerns himself with the affairs of others.

**But** – connecting word that contrast what comes before it with what follows. It indicates a change of direction in what is said.

**BY** – here is how things are done.

## C

**Caesar**- The common title of the successive Roman emperors, taken from Julius Caesar.

**Caesarea**- We find "Caesarea" and "Caesarea Philippi" in the Bible. "Caesarea Philippi" was: 'A city three or four miles east of Dan, near the eastern source of the Jordan. "Caesarea" on the Mediterranean" was visited by our Savior shortly before his transfiguration.

**Cage**- It is said symbolically that as a cage or trap is full of birds, so the houses of the Jews were full of deceit. Jer 5:27.

**Cain**- The first murderer. **The way of Cain**- is the way of false prophets.

**Caiaphas**- the Jewish high priest (A.D. 27- 36) at the beginning of our Lord's public ministry, in the reign of

Tiberius (Lu 3:2), and also at the time of his condemnation and crucifixion (Mt 26:3,57; Joh 11:49; 18:13- 14).

**Calf**- A young cow. 'Calves were commonly made use of in sacrifices, and are therefore frequently mentioned in Scripture. The "fatted calf" was regarded as the choicest of animal food; it was frequently also offered as a special sacrifice (1Sa 28:24; Am 6:4; Lu 15:23).

**Call**- To cry for help, hence to pray (Ge 4:26).

**call upon the Lord**- This phrase is not 'Say a prayer to Jesus' but is switching sides in a spiritual war (Ac 2:21; 7:59; 9:14; Ro 10:12; 1Co 1:2). (2.) God calls with respect to men when he designates them to some special office (Ex 31:2; Isa 22:20; Ac 13:2), and when he invites them to accept his offered grace (Mt 9:13; 11:28; 22:4).

**Calm**- Still; quiet; being at rest; as the air. Hence not stormy or tempestuous; as a calm day.

**Calvary**- Latin form of the Hebrew word Gulgolet was interpreted, "the place of a skull".

**Camp**- The ground on which an army pitch their tents, whether for a night or a longer time.

**Camel**- There are two distinct species of camels. The Bactrian camel is distinguished by two humps. It is a native of the high table- lands of Central Asia. The Arabian camel or dromedary, from the Greek dromos, "a runner" (Isa 60:6; Jer 2:23), has but one hump, and is a native of Western Asia or Africa.

**Cana**- The birthplace of Nathanael, the city in which our Lord performed his first miracle, and from which he soon after sent a miraculous healing to the nobleman's son at Capernaum, eighteen miles off, Joh 2:1- 11; 4:46- 54; 21:2. It was called Cana of Galilee, now Kana- el- Jelil, and lay seven miles north of Nazareth.

**Canaan**- The fourth son of Ham (Ge 10:6). His descendants were under a curse in consequence of the transgression of his father (Ge 9:22- 27).

**Canker**- a gangrene or mortification which gradually spreads over the whole body (2Ti 2:17). In Jas 5:3 "cankered" means "rusted" or "tarnished".

**Candle**- The Hebrew word denotes properly any kind of candle or lamp or torch. It is used as a figure of conscience (Pr 20:27), of a Christian example (Mt 5:14- 15), and of prosperity (Job 21:17; Pr 13:9).

**Candlestick**- the lamp- stand, "candelabrum," which Moses was commanded to make for the tabernacle,

according to the pattern shown him. It is also used, symbolically, for the church which is supposed to be "the light of the world".

**Canker-** The word of those who err from the truth eats like a 'gangrene' which consumes the flesh. Such teaching saps the vitals of Christianity. 2Ti 2:17.

**Capernaum-** "the village of Nachum".) N.W. of sea of Tiberius, in the land of Gennesaret (now El Ghuweir. compare Mt 14:34 with Joh 6:17,21- 24), a most populous and prosperous region. Jesus lived here and taught much here.

**Captain-** Heb. sar (1Sa 22:2; 2Sa 23:19). Rendered "chief," Ge 40:2; 41:9; rendered also "prince," Da 1:7; "ruler," Jg 9:30; "governor," 1Ki 22:26. This same Hebrew word denotes a military captain (Ex 18:21; 2Ki 1:9; De 1:15; 1Sa 18:13, etc.),

**Captive-** The state of being a prisoner, or of being in the power of an enemy by force or the fate of war. 2. Subjection to love. 3. Subjection; a state of being under control.

**Carcase-** The dead body of a beast; used sometimes in a contemptuous way of the dead body of a human being.

**Care-** Concern; anxiety; solicitude; nothing some degree of pain in the mind, from apprehension of evil. They shall eat bread by weight and with care. Ezek. 4. 2. Caution; a looking to; regard; attention, or heed, with a view to safety or protection, as in the phrase, take care of yourself.

**Carnally-** Pertaining to flesh; fleshly; sensual; opposed to spiritual; as carnal pleasure. 2. Being in the natural state; unregenerate.

**Carpenter-** An artificer in stone, iron, and copper, as well as in wood (2Sa 5:11; 1Ch 14:1; Mr 6:3). The tools used by carpenters are mentioned in 1Sa 13:19- 20; Jg 4:21; Isa 10:15; 44:13.

**Carriage-** This does not appear to be ever used in the scriptures in the modern sense of the word, but signifies 'the thing carried,' 'baggage.' Jg 18:21; 1Sa 17:22; Isa 10:28; Ac 21:15.

**carry / carried-** To bear, convey, or transport, by sustaining and moving the thing carried, either by bodily strength, upon a beast, in a vehicle, or in any kind of water- craft. In general, it implies a moving from the speaker or the place present or near, to a place more distant, and so is opposed to bring and fetch.

**Case-** Ordinarily to describe the circumstances or condition of things; sometimes, juridically (aitia, Mt 19:10; Ac 25:14), as that for which a reckoning has to be given, as frequently the Latin res. In Ex 5:19, "they were in evil case," is interpreted as "were set on mischief."

**Cast-** In general "to throw," with various degrees of violence; usually, with force, but not so necessarily, as e.g. in cast a net," cast lots.

**cast away-** Get rid of something in a violent way.

**cast down-** Forcibly remove from an exalted position and placed under foot.

**cast out-** Is not destroyed but is completely removed from the area under consideration and treated as trash.

**Castle-** A military fortress.

**Catch-** To seize or lay hold on with the hand; carrying the sense of pursuit, thrusting forward the hand, or rushing on.

**Catholic-** universal religion.

**Cattle-** Animals raised domestically for work and food.

**Cause-** A suit or action in court; any legal process which a party institutes to obtain his demand, or by which he seeks his right or his supposed right. This is a legal, scriptural and popular use of the word.

**Cave-** A hollow place in the earth; a subterranean cavern; a den. This may be natural or artificial. The primitive inhabitants of the earth, in many countries, lived in caves; and the present inhabitants of some parts of the earth, especially in the high northern latitudes, occupy caves, particularly in winter.

**Cease-** To put a stop to; to put an end to.

**Cenchrea-** the eastern harbor of Corinth (i.e. its harbor on the Saronic Gulf) and the emporium of its trade with the Asiatic shores of the Mediterranean, as Lechaem on the Corinthian Gulf connected it with Italy and the west. St. Paul sailed from Cenchrea,

**Censer-** The vessel in which incense was presented on "the golden altar" before the Lord in the temple (Ex 30:1-9).

**Centurion-** A Roman officer in command of a hundred men (Mr 15:39,44- 45).

**Cephas-** A name given to Peter by Jesus which is used symbolically and means a small stone.

**Certify**- To testify to in writing; to make a declaration in writing, under hand, or hand and seal, to make known or establish a fact.

**Chaff**- The refuse of winnowed corn. It was usually burned (Ex 15:7; Isa 5:24; Mt 3:12). This word is used symbolically for abortive wickedness (Ps 1:4; Mt 3:12) such as lost people or false doctrines.

**Chamber**- A room.

**Chambering**- Getting a room for sinful sexual purposes.

**Chance**- An event that happens, falls out or takes place, without being contrived, intended, expected or foreseen; the effect of an unknown cause, or the unusual or unexpected effect of a known cause; accident; casualty; fortuitous event; as, time and chance happen to all.

**Charge**- Legal command and commitment.

**Charger**- a bowl or deep dish. The silver vessels given by the heads of the tribes for the services of the tabernacle are so named (Nu 7:13, etc.).

**Chasten**- Corrected; punished; afflicted for correction.

**Chastisement**- Correction; punishment; pain inflicted for punishment and correction, either by stripes or otherwise. The Lord chasteneth, and scourgeth His children for their good.

**Chain**- A series of links or rings connected, or fitted into one another, usually made of some kind of metal, as a chain of gold, or of iron; but the word is not restricted to any particular kind of material. It is used often for an ornament about the person. It was used as an ornament (Pr 1:9; Song 1:10). Chains were also used as fetters wherewith prisoners were bound (Jg 16:21; 2Sa 3:34; 2Ki 25:7; Jer 39:7).

**Charity**- Showing God's love to others regardless of who they are. Charity differs from love in that love is shown to people we know.

**Charity**- showing God's love to people you don't know regardless who they are.

**Chariot**- a vehicle generally used for warlike purposes. Sometimes, though but rarely, it is spoken of as used for peaceful purposes.

**Chaste**- Pure from all unlawful commerce of sexes. Applied to persons before marriage, it signifies pure from all sexual commerce, undefiled; applied to married persons, true to the marriage bed.

**Cheek**- The side of the face below the eyes on each side. Smiting on the cheek was accounted a grievous injury and insult (Job 16:10; La 3:30; Mic 5:1).

**Cherish**- Treat with tenderness and affection; to give warmth, ease or comfort to.

**Cheer**- To grow cheerful; to become gladsome, or joyous.

**Chief**- Highest in office or rank; principal as a chief priest; the chief butler. Gen 40:9.

**Child**- Someone who has less physical or spiritual maturity than the speaker. This word has considerable latitude of meaning in Scripture. Thus, Joseph is called a child at the time when he was probably about sixteen years of age (Ge 37:3); and Benjamin is so called when he was above thirty years (Ge 44:20).

**Children of Abraham** - The Jews claimed to be children of Abraham but Jesus said that the true children of Abraham would have his faith.

**Children of the bridechamber**- A newly married Jewish couple were ordered to have a one year honeymoon and that time was considered to be the 'bridechamber'. Any child born during that year was a child of the bridechamber.

**Children of disobedience**- true children of God who have a lifestyle of disobedience.

**Children of God**- The truly saved.

**Children of Israel**- Jews who truly trusted God.

**Children of wrath**- True children of God who have disobeyed God so long that He deals with them in His wrath.

**My little children**- A tender address used by a spiritual leader to his followers.

**Choke**- To stop the passage of the breath, by filling the windpipe or compressing the neck.. Spiritually used for someone who keeps others from hearing and understanding God's word.

**Choose / Chosen**- To pick out; to select; to take by way of preference from two or more things offered; to make choice of. The word chosen is the past-tense form of the word choose.

**Christ**- teaches you how to grow spiritually after you got saved. It is also the New Testament form of the Old Testament word of Messiah.



**Christ: two applications-** (1) = Fulfillment of OT promises. (2) = God's role that deals with saved while they are still alive in order to bring spiritual maturity (perfecting) to them.

**Christ and blood-** Used to pay to sins done by saved people after their initial salvation if they confess and forsake those sins. Any such sins not forgiven are net at the "judgment seat of Christ".

**Christ Jesus-** Combination of both roles with the emphasis on the role of Christ. Promises made through the role of Christ Jesus are only given to saved people who are letting the role of Christ to spiritually mature them.

**Christ Jesus is faithful-** All promises given through the role of Christ Jesus will always be kept by God.

**Christ lives through us-** When saved people allow Him to do this, they receive "righteousness" in their heavenly account.

**Christ: the head of-** the church.

**Christian-** a saved person whose life displays control by Christ. Note; there are many wrong definitions for this word including the claim that all saved are Christians.

**Church** – is a group of saved and baptized believers.

**Church(es) of God-** Churches which truly belong to God and serve God instead of religion.

**Churches (plural)-** Many local assemblies as opposed to the claim of one universal church.

**Cilicia-** The area surrounding Paul's home city of Tarsus.

**Circumcise-** To cut off the foreskin of males; a ceremony or rite in the Jewish and Mohammedan religions. The claim of 'female circumcision' is a perversion of "the word of God" and mutilation of the female. The 'circ', in "circumcision" means 'circle' because it is cutting in a circle all around the male penis. Also, this word is used, spiritually, for our "Lord Jesus Christ" cutting all around the heart to remove lusts of the flesh.

**Circumcision-** Genesis 17:10 tells us that circumcision was given as an outward sign of a spiritual covenant. It is used symbolically, by the word of God, for all who rely on keeping religious rules to make them right with God.

**Citizen-** One having municipal rights, duties, and protection.

**City-** An area where many people live together and have a local government rule over them. A fenced city was a city surrounded by fortifications and high walls, with watch-towers upon them (2Ch 11:11; De 3:5). A city with suburbs was a city surrounded with open pasture- grounds, such as the forty- eight cities which were given to the Levites (Nu 35:2- 7).

**City of refuge-** The Bible has 11 verses which mention a city of refuge (Numbers 35:25- 28, 32; Joshua 21:13, 21, 27, 32, 38; 1Chronicles 6:57) that someone could flee to if they killed someone by accident. If they left that city they could be killed for having killed someone else, even though it was an accident. So there was a Biblical punishment for an 'accidental death', even though it wasn't the same as the punishment for 'deliberate murder'.

**Clamour-** A great outcry; noise; exclamation; vociferation, made by a loud human voice continued or repeated, or by a multitude of voices. It often expresses complaint and urgent demand.

**Clay-** This word is used of sediment found in pits or in streets (Isa 57:20; Jer 38:28), of dust mixed with spittle (Joh 9:6), and of potter's clay (Isa 41:25; Na 3:14; Jer 18:1- 6; Ro 9:21). Clay was used for sealing (Job 38:14; Jer 32:14).

**Cluster-** A bunch; a number of things of the same kind growing or joined together; a knot; as a cluster of raisins.

**Cleanse-** To purify; to make clean; to remove filth, or foul matter of any kind, or by any process whatever, as by washing, rubbing, scouring, scraping, purging, ventilation, etc.; as, to cleanse the hands or face to cleanse a garment; to cleanse the bowels; to cleanse a ship; to cleanse an infected house. 1John 1:9 tells the saved person: "If we confess our sins, he is faithful and just to forgive us our sins, and to cleanse us from all unrighteousness".

**Clear / Clearly-** Open; free from obstruction; as a clear plat of ground; the way is clear. Free from foreign matter; unmixed; pure.

**Cleave-** To stick; to adhere; to hold to.

**Climb-** To creep up by little and little, or step by step; to mount or ascend, by means of the hands and feet; to rise on any fixed object, by seizing it with the hands and lifting the body, and by thrusting with the feet; as, to climb a tree or a precipice.

**Cloke-** A loose outer garment worn over other clothes both by men and women. The phrase: "a cloke of covetousness" identified someone who pretended to preach God's word while actually preaching for money.

**Closet**- A storehouse (Lu 12:24), and hence a place of privacy and retirement (Mt 6:6; Lu 12:3).

**Clothed**- Covered with garments; dressed; invested; furnished with clothing.

**Cloud**- "A covering," because clouds cover the sky. The word is used as a symbol of the Divine presence, as indicating the splendour of that glory which it conceals (Ex 16:10; 33:9; Nu 11:25; 12:5; Job 22:14; Ps 18:11). A "cloud without rain" is a proverbial saying, denoting a man who does not keep his promise (Pr 16:15; Isa 18:4; 25:5; Jude 1:12).

**Coals of fire**- Used to start a fire. The phrase "thou shalt heap coals of fire on his head" is often misinterpreted. See the note for Romans 12:20, at [ljc1611kjv.com/1kjv.com](http://ljc1611kjv.com/1kjv.com), for the correct interpretation.

**Coast**- Border; region/country; land by water. Ex 10:14.

**Coat**- The tunic worn like the shirt next the skin (Le 16:4; Song 5:3; 2Sa 15:32; Ex 28:4; 29:5).

**Cock**- A male chicken.

**Cold**- An extreme lack of warmth. Used symbolically for an extreme lack of caring and even antagonistic feelings.

**Colon**- Punctuation mark for equivalent value, same message said two different ways.

**Colony**- The city of Philippi was a Roman colony (Ac 16:12), i.e., a military settlement of Roman soldiers and citizens, planted there to keep in subjection a newly-conquered district. A colony was Rome in miniature, under Roman municipal law, but governed by military officers (praetors and lictors), not by proconsuls. It had an independent internal government, the *jus Italicum*; i.e., the privileges of Italian citizens.

**Colt**- The young of the equine genus of animals or horse kind. In America, colt is equally applied to the male or female, and this is unquestionable correct. The male is called a house-colt, and the female is called a filly.

**Come after me**- The phrase "come after me" is similar, in meaning, but different from the word "follow". The word "follow" includes the concept of the second person going the same way as the first person. However, the Bible uses the phrase "come after me" for when the second person comes later in time and is related, in some way, to the first person, but is not going, exactly, the same way as the first person.

**Comely or Comeliness**- Properly, becoming; suitable: whence, handsome; graceful. Applied to person or form, it denotes symmetry or due proportion, but it expresses less than beautiful or elegant.

**Comfort**- To strengthen; to invigorate; to cheer or enliven.

**Commandment**- A mandate; an order or injunction given by authority; charge; precept.

**Comma**- Punctuation mark for separate items of equal value.

**Commend**- To represent as worthy of notice, regard, or kindness; to speak in favor of; to recommend.

**Commit**- To give in trust; to put into the hands or power of another; to entrust; with to.

**Common**- Of no rank or superior excellence; ordinary and applies to the majority of any grouping. Not noble, not distinguished.

**Commonly**- Usually; generally; ordinarily; frequently; for the most part; as, confirmed habits commonly continue through life.

**Commotion**- Tumult of people; disturbance; disorder, which may amount at times to sedition or insurrection; as the commotions of a state.

**Communion**- A formalized ongoing personal relationship.

**Communicate**- The two-way sharing (between two beings which include spirits) of thoughts, feelings, material possessions and other things.

**Companion**- One who keeps company with another; one with whom a person frequently associates, and converses. It differs from friend, says Johnson, as acquaintance from confidence. The word does not necessarily imply friendship; but a companion is often or generally a friend.

**Company**- Any assemblage of persons; a collection of men, or other animals, in a very indefinite sense. It may be applied to a small number, or any multitude whatever.

**Compare / Comparison**- To set or bring things together in fact or in contemplation, and to examine the relations they bear to each other, with a view to ascertain their agreement or disagreement; as, to compare two pieces of cloth, two tables, or coins; to compare reasons and arguments; to compare pleasure with pain.

**Compass**- Stretch; reach; extent; the limit or boundary of a space, and the space included; applied to time, space, sound, etc. To look all around as in a complete circle.

**Compassion**- A suffering with another; painful sympathy; a sensation of sorrow excited by the distress or misfortunes of another; pity; commiseration. Compassion is a mixed passion, compounded of love and sorrow; at least some portion of love generally attends the pain or regret, or is excited by it.

**Compel**- To drive or urge with force, or irresistibly; to constrain; to oblige; to necessitate, either by physical or moral force.

**Complain**- One who expresses grief; one who laments; one who finds fault; a murmurer.

**Complete**- The verb ordinarily used for the coming to pass of what had been predicted. The "complete" in Col 2:10; 4:12 to express the final and entire attainment of what is treated, leaving nothing beyond to be desired or hoped for. Made full. Accurately fitted for.

**Comprehend**- Complete understanding. To contain; to include; to comprise.

**Conceit**- Conception; that which is conceived, imagined, or formed in the mind; idea; thought; image. In laughing there ever precedeth a conceit of somewhat ridiculous, and therefore it is proper to man.

**Conceived**- Formed in the womb; framed in the mind; devised; imagined; understood.

**Conception**- The start of life.

**Concern**- Pertaining to; regarding; having relation to.

**Conclude**- To close an argument by inferring.

**Concord**- Agreement between persons; union in opinions, sentiments, views or interests; peace; harmony.

**Concupiscence**- The coveting of carnal things, or an irregular appetite for worldly good; inclination for unlawful enjoyments.

**Condemn**- The judicial act of declaring one guilty, and dooming him to punishment.

**Condemnation of fools**- In the word of God, the worse condemnation is reserved for fools because they deliberately reject knowledge, wisdom and understanding from God.

**Condescend**- To descend from the privileges of superior rank or dignity, to do some act to an inferior, which strict justice or the ordinary rules of civility do not require. Hence, to submit or yield, as to an inferior, implying an occasional relinquishment of distinction.

**Conduct**- Literally, the act of leading; guidance; command.

**Confess**- To own, acknowledge or avow, as a crime, a fault, a charge, a debt, or something that is against one's interest, or reputation.

**Confession**- Confession is acknowledging something with a lifestyle. There are two applications of This word, one of which is apt to be overlooked. The one is the confession of sin. This was enjoined by the law, and if accompanied with a sacrifice it led to forgiveness. Le 5:5; Nu 5:7. The other application of the term is confessing the Lord Jesus.

**Confer**- To give, or bestow; followed by on. Coronation confers on the king no royal authority. This word is particularly used to express the grant of favors, benefits and privileges to be enjoyed, or rights which are to be permanent; as, to confer on one the privileges of a citizen; to confer a title or an honor.

**Conflict**- A striking or dashing against each other, as of two moving bodies in opposition; violent collision of substances. A fighting; combat, as between men, and applicable to individuals or to armies; as, the conflict was long and desperate.

**Confide**- To entrust; to commit to the charge of, with a belief in the fidelity of the person entrusted; to deliver into possession of another, with assurance of safe keeping, or good management; followed by to.

**Confident**- A trusting, or reliance; an assurance of mind or firm belief in the integrity, stability or veracity of another, or in the truth and reality of a fact.

**Confidence**- A trusting, or reliance; an assurance of mind or firm belief in the integrity, stability or veracity of another, or in the truth and reality of a fact.

**Confirm**- That which confirms; that which gives new strength or assurance; additional evidence; proof; convincing testimony.

**Conform**- Made to resemble; reduced to a likeness of; made agreeable to; suited.

**Confound**- mingle or blend so that natures cannot be distinguished, to throw into disorder, To perplex; to

disturb the apprehension by indistinctness of ideas or words, To abash; to cast down; to make ashamed.

**Confusion**- In a general sense, a mixture of several things promiscuously; hence, disorder; irregularity; as the confusion of tongues at Babel. 2. Tumult; want of order in society.

**Congregation**- The term is constantly applied in the O.T. to the community of Israel, and also to the actual assembling together of the people according to the unity of the congregation. It is also applied in the N. T. to a church.

**Conscience**- Internal or self- knowledge, or judgment of right and wrong; or the faculty, power or principle within us, which decides on the lawfulness or unlawfulness of our own actions and affections, and instantly approves or condemns them.

**Consecrate**- Made sacred by ceremonies or solemn rites; separated from a common to a sacred use; devoted or dedicated to the service and worship of God; made venerable.

**Consent**- To be of one mind, to agree; to think, feel or perceive. See Sense and Assent. 1. Agreement of the mind to what is proposed or state by another; accord; hence, a yielding of the mind or will to that which is proposed; as, a parent gives his consent to the marriage of his daughter. We generally use This word in cases where power, rights, and claims are concerned.

**Consist**- To stand together; to be in a fixed or permanent state, as a body composed of parts in union or connection.

**Consider**- To fix the mind on, with a view to a careful examination; to think on with care; to ponder; to study; to meditate on.

**Conspiracy**- A combination of men for an evil purpose; an agreement between two or more persons, to commit some crime in concert; particularly, a combination to commit treason, or excite sedition or insurrection against the government of a state; a plot; as a conspiracy against the life of a king; a conspiracy against the government.

**Consolation**- Comfort; alleviation of misery, or distress of mind; refreshment of mind or spirits; a comparative degree of happiness in distress or misfortune, springing from any circumstance that abates the evil, or supports and strengthens the mind, as hope, joy, courage and the like.

**Consort**- A companion; a partner; an intimate associate; particularly, a partner of the bed; a wife or husband.

**Constrain**- Compel with irresistible force. (2Ki 4:8).

**Consult**- To seek the opinion or advice of another by, by a statement of facts, and suitable inquiries, for the purpose of directing ones own judgment; followed by with.

**Consume**- To destroy, by separating the parts of a thing, by decomposition, as by fire, or eating, devouring, and annihilating the form of a substance. it takes up time, that is, anything that is consumed happens .over a time span.

**Contain**- To hold, as a vessel; as, the vessel contains a gallon. Hence, to have capacity; to be able to hold; applied to an empty vessel.

**Contend**- to stive in opposition.

**Content / Contentment**- a resting or satisfaction of mind without disquiet; acquiescence.

**Contentious**- Apt to contend; given to angry debate; quarrelsome; perverse.

**Contempt**- The act of despising; the act of viewing or considering and treating as mean, vile and worthless; disdain; hatred of what is mean or deemed vile.

**Continue**- To remain in a state, or place; to abide for any time indefinitely.

**Continueth**- A lifestyle of continuing.

**Contrariwise**- contrary and wise, manner. On the contrary; oppositely; on the other hand. Not rendering evil for evil, nor railing for railing; but contrariwise, blessing. 1 Peter 3.

**Contrary**- Opposite; adverse; moving against or in an opposite direction; as contrary winds.

**Contradiction**- Opposite; adverse; moving against or in an opposite direction.

**Convenient**- Fit; suitable; proper; adapted to use or to wants; commodious; followed by to or for; usually by for.

**Convert**- To change or turn into another substance or form; as, to convert gases into water, or water into ice. To change from one state to another; as, to convert a barren waste into a fruitful field.

**Conversation**- Your way of live. How we live speaks louder that what comes out of our mouth and if the two disagree, we prove ourselves to be a liar.

**Conversation-** lifestyle, way of life.

**Conversion-** A turning or change from one state to another; with regard to substances, transmutation; as a conversion of water into ice, or of food into chyle or blood.

**Convict-** To prove or find guilty of a crime charged; to determine or decide to be guilty, as by the verdict of a jury, by confession, or other legal decision.

**Convince-** To prove prior position wrong. To persuade or satisfy the mind by evidence; to subdue the opposition of the mind to truth, or to what is alleged, and compel it to yield its assent; as, to convince a man of his errors; or to convince him of the truth.

**Core-** Core is another spelling for Korah. Korah tries to gainsay a position above what God gave him and was cast into Hell alive along with all of his followers.

**Corn-** Various Hebrew words are translated 'corn,' and usually signify any kind of grain.

**Cornelius-** The first Gentile to be saved in the New Testament.

**Corner-** The angle of a house (Job 1:19) or a street (Pr 7:8).

**corner stone-** A foundation a stone upon which the rest of the foundation and house was built. One of the designations of Christ. In Isa 28:16, the Lord God lays in Zion.

**Correction-** The act of bringing back, from error or deviation, to a just standard, as to truth, rectitude, justice or propriety. That which is intended to rectify, or to cure faults; punishment; discipline; chastisement.

**Corrupt-** To change from a sound to a putrid or putrescent state; to separate the component parts of a body, as by a natural process, which accompanied by a fetid smell.

**Corrupt-** to make it worst, to break, to violate from good or bad.

**Cost / Costliness-** The price, value or equivalent of a thing purchased; the amount in value paid, charge or engaged to be paid for any thing bought or taken in barter. The word is equally applicable to the price in money or commodities; as the cost of a suit of clothes; the cost of a house or farm.

**Couch-** 1. A bed; a place for rest or sleep.

**Council-** An assembly of men summoned or convened for consultation, deliberation and advice.

**Counsel-** Advice; opinion, or instruction, given upon request or otherwise, for directing the judgment or conduct of another; opinion given upon deliberation or consultation. Every purpose is established by counsel. Proverbs 20.

**Counsellor-** Any person who gives advice; but properly one who is authorized by natural relationship, or by birth, office or profession, to advise another in regard to his

future conduct and measures.

**Countenance-** Appropriately, the human face; the whole form of the face, or system of features; visage. A merry heart maketh a cheerful countenance.

**Country-** Properly, the land lying about or near a city; the territory situated in the vicinity of a city.

**Courage-** Bravery; intrepidity; that quality of mind which enables men to encounter danger and difficulties with firmness, or without fear or depression of spirits; valor; boldness; resolution.

**Course-** In its general sense, a passing; a moving, or motion forward, in a direct or curving line; applicable to any body or substance, solid or fluid.

**Court-** The enclosure of the tabernacle (Ex 27:9- 19; 40:8), of the temple (1Ki 6:36), of a prison (Ne 3:25), of a private house (2Sa 17:18), and of a king's palace (2Ki 20:4).

**Courteous-** Polite; wellbred; being of elegant manners; civil; obliging; condescending; applied to persons.

**Covenant-** A spiritual contract enforced by GOD. A mutual consent or agreement of two or more persons, to do or to forbear some act or thing.

**covenant breakers-** This is the true Biblical definition of adultery. Please see the Word Study on Adultery, at [ljc1611kjv.com](http://ljc1611kjv.com) [1kjv.com](http://1kjv.com), for more details.

**Cover-** An item which conceals another item with a barrier that can not be penetrated.

**Covet-** To desire or wish for, with eagerness; to desire earnestly to obtain or possess; in a good sense. But also to desire inordinately; to desire that which it is unlawful to obtain or possess; in a bad sense.

**Covetousness**- A strong or inordinate desire of obtaining and possessing some supposed good; usually in a bad sense, and applied to an inordinate desire of wealth or avarice. Out of the heart proceedeth covetousness. Mark 7. Mortify your members- - and covetousness which is idolatry. Colossians 3. 2. Strong desire; eagerness.

**Craft**- Art; ability; dexterity; skill. Poesy is the poets skill or craft of making. Cunning, art or skill, in a bad sense, or applied to bad purposes; artifice; guile; skill or dexterity employed to effect purposes by deceit.

**Crafty**- A wrong use of craft. A type of the wisdom of man / wisdom of This world.

**Create**- Formed from nothing; caused to exist; produced; generated; invested with a new character; formed into new combinations, with a peculiar shape, constitution and properties. Only God can truly create from nothing.

**Creation**- The power used in Creation which causes something to happen or not happen.

**Creator**- Only God is a Creator. "In the beginning God created the heaven and the earth;" This was followed by

His creating all that has breath, and finally man; who is exhorted to remember his Creator in the days of his youth. Ec 12:1.

**Creature**- That which is created; every being besides the Creator, or everything not self- existent. The sun, moon and stars; the earth, animals, plants, light, darkness, air, water, etc., are the creatures of God.

**Creep**- To move with the belly on the ground, or the surface of any other body, as a worm or serpent without legs, or as many insects with feet and very short legs; to crawl.

**Crete**- As seen by the usage in Acts, This was a well-known place at the time of the early church. It was used for trade and navigation. Therefore, it could be very important in sending the Gospel throughout the known world. However, the people in the church there had to first be converted to not only be saved but to also live a life which displayed the character of Christ.

**Crime**- An act which violates a law, divine or human; an act which violates a rule of moral duty; an offense against the laws of right, prescribed by God or man, or against any rule of duty plainly implied in those laws. A crime may consist in omission or neglect, as well as in commission, or positive transgression.

**Crooked**- Bent; curved; curving; winding. 2. Winding in moral conduct; devious; froward; perverse; going out of the path of rectitude; given to obliquity or wandering from duty.

**Cross**- The symbol of the payment for sin made by Jesus Christ.

**Cross, take up**- We are commanded to: 'Accept the suffering and shame to truly represent Jesus Christ in a wicked world and act like he acted'.

**Crow / Crew**- To cry or make a noise as a cock, in joy, gaiety or defiance. 2. To boast in triumph; to vaunt; to vapor; to swagger. A popular, but not an elegant use of the word.

**Crown**- An ornament worn on the head by kings and sovereign princes, as a badge of imperial or regal power and dignity. Figuratively, regal power; royalty; kingly government, or executive authority. Crowns show that the person wearing them has authority and a special position.

**Crucify / Crucified**- To nail to a cross; to put to death by nailing the hands and feet to a cross or gibbet, sometimes anciently, by fastening a criminal to a tree, with cords. Spiritually, this means to accept the suffering of Jesus Christ because you truly represent God in this sinful world.

**Cruel**- Disposed to give pain to others, in body or mind; willing or pleased to torment, vex or afflict; inhuman; destitute of pity, compassion or kindness; fierce; ferocious; savage; barbarous; hardhearted; applied to persons or their dispositions.

**Crumb**- Occurs only in the New Testament, of remnants of food, scraps. Lazarus desired "to be fed with the crumbs that fell from the rich man's table" (Lu 16:21).

**Cry**- Notorious; common; great; as a crying sin or abuse. Importunate call; clamor; outcry.

**Crystal**- The Greek word here used means also literally "ice." The ancients regarded the crystal as only pure water congealed into extreme hardness by great length of time.

**Cubit**- A word derived from the Latin cubitus, the lower arm. It is difficult to determine the exact length of This measure, from the uncertainty whether it included the entire length from the elbow to the tip of the longest finger, or only from the elbow to the root of the hand at the wrist. Please see the note for John 6:7, at [ljc1611kjv.com](http://ljc1611kjv.com) [1kjv.com](http://1kjv.com), for various Biblical measurements.

**Culture**- wisdom of the world.

**Cumbered**- To be overwhelmed with cares. Lu 10:40.

**Cunning**- Worldly knowing; skillful; experienced; well-instructed. It is applied to all kinds of knowledge, but generally and appropriately, to the skill and dexterity of artificers, or the knowledge acquired by experience.

**Cup**- For drinking; Ge 44:5, for divination, practiced by dropping gold, silver, or jewels into the water, and examining their appearance; or looking into the water as a mirror. Used symbolically for what holds something which we take into our body and it affects our spirit.

**Cure**- Healed; restored to health or soundness; removed, as a disease; remedied; dried, smoked, or otherwise prepared for preservation.

**Cure**- Doomed to destruction or misery: The city shall be accursed. John 6. 2. Separated from the faithful; cast out of the church; excommunicated. I could wish myself accursed from Christ.

**Custom**- Frequent or common use, or practice; a frequent repetition of the same act; hence, way; established manner; habitual practice.

**Cut**- To separate the parts of any body by an edged instrument, either by striking, as with an ax, or by sawing or rubbing; to make a gash, incision or notch, which separates the external part of a body, as to cut the flesh. It signifies also, to cut into pieces; to sever or divide; as, to cut timber in the forest.

**Cut off**- Completely separated.

**Cyprus**- One of the largest islands of the Mediterranean, about 148 miles long and 40 broad. It is distant about 60 miles from the Syrian coast. It was the "Chittim" of the Old Testament (Nu 24:24).

**Cyrene / Cyrenian**- A city (now Tripoli) in Upper Libya, North Africa, founded by a colony of Greeks (B.C. 630). It contained latterly a large number of Jews, who were introduced into the city by Ptolemy, the son of Lagus, because he thought they would contribute to the security of the place.

D

**Daily**- Happening or being every day; done day by day.

**Dainty**- Something nice and delicate to the taste; that which is exquisitely delicious; a delicacy.

**Damage**- Any hurt, injury or harm to one's estate; any loss of property sustained; any hinderance to the increase of property; or any obstruction to the success of an enterprise. A man suffers damage by the destruction of his corn, by the burning of his house, by the detention of a ship which defeats a profitable voyage, or by the failure of a profitable undertaking. Damage then is any actual loss, or the prevention of profit.

**Damascus**- A celebrated metropolis of Syria, first mentioned in Ge 14:15; 15:2, and now probably the oldest city on the globe. It stands on the river Barada, the ancient Chrysorrhoeas, in a beautiful and fertile plain on the east and south east of Anti-Lebanon.

**Damsel**- A young woman. Formerly, a young man or woman of noble or genteel extraction.

**Dance**- The Biblical word is not speaking of the sensual dance of today. found in Jg 21:21,23; Ps 30:11; 149:3; 150:4; Jer 31:4,13, etc., as the translation of hul, which points to the whirling motion of Oriental sacred dances. It is the rendering of a word (rakad') which means to skip or leap for joy, in Ec 3:4; Job 21:11; Isa 13:21, etc. In the New Testament it is in like manner the translation of different Greek words, circular motion (Lu 15:25); leaping up and down in concert (Mt 11:17), and by a single person (Mt 14:6). It is spoken of as symbolical of rejoicing (Ec 3:4. Comp. Ps 30:11; Mt 11:17).

**Danger**- Peril; risk; hazard; exposure to injury, loss, pain or other evil. Our craft is in danger to be set at nought.

**Damn / Damnation**- Sentence or condemnation to everlasting punishment in the future state; or the state of eternal torments.

**Dare**- To have courage to any purpose; to have strength of mind or hardihood to undertake anything; to be bold enough; not to be afraid; to venture; to be adventurous.

**Dart**- an instrument of war; a light spear. "Fiery darts" (Eph 6:16) are so called in allusion to the habit of discharging darts from the bow while they are on fire or armed with some combustible material.

**Dash**- To strike suddenly or violently, whether throwing or falling; as, to dash one stone against another.

**Daughter**- A female descendent. It is also used, in the Bible, to designate, (1.) A niece or any female descendant (Ge 20:12; 24:48; 28:6). (2.) Women as natives of a place, or as professing the religion of a place; as, "the daughters of Zion" (Isa 3:16), "daughters of the Philistines" (2Sa 1:20).

**Darkness**- The absence of light. Also used symbolically for the influence of all that opposes God. It is a lack of spiritual light and guidance from God and includes the lust of the flesh, the way of the world, the pride of life and the guidance of a devil. Please also see the note for light and the note for 'light and darkness'.

**Dawn / Dawning**- Growing light; first appearing luminous; opening; as the dawning day.

**Day**- The time when the sun provides light to a part of the Earth. The Jews reckoned the day from sunset to sunset (Le 23:32). It was originally divided into three parts (Ps 55:17). "The heat of the day" (1Sa 11:11; Ne 7:3) was at our nine o'clock, and "the cool of the day" just before sunset (Ge 3:8).

**Day of**- These are different lengths of time, identified in the Bible, when a particular even occurs. They can be up to 1,000 years. The various "days", identified in the Bible, include:

- of wrath ('the day of judgment on lost sinners') is in: Romans 2:5; Revelation 6:17.
- day of slaughter ('day of sin') is in: James 5:5.
- day of God ('Day of Armageddon') is in: 2Peter 3:12; Revelation 16:14.
- day of judgment ('Judgment seat of Christ for the saved or great white throne judgment for the lost') is in: Matthew 10:15; Matthew 11:22,24; Matthew 12:36; Mark 6:11; 2Peter 2:9; 2Peter 3:7; 1John 4:17.
- day of my Spirit ('Church Age') is in: Acts 2:18.
- day of salvation ('day you get saved until you die') is in: 2Corinthians 6:2.
- day of redemption ('day you get saved until you die') is in: Ephesians 4:30.
- day of our Lord Jesus Christ ('the day that we each personally appear before the judgment seat of Christ') is in: 1Corinthians 1:8.
- day of the Lord Jesus ('the day we answer to the Lord Jesus for our obedience or disobedience while we lived in the flesh') is in: 1Corinthians 5:5.
- day of the Lord ('includes the battle of Armageddon and the 'Sheep and Goat Judgment' where anyone who did not help the Jews during the great tribulation is cast into Hell') is in: Isaiah 2:12; Isaiah 13:6,9; Isaiah 34:8; Jeremaih 46:10; Lamentations 2:22; Ezekiel 13:5; Ezekiel 30:3; Joel 1:15; Joel 2:1,11,31; Joel 3:14; Amos 5:18,20; Obadiah 1:15; Zephaniah 1:7- 8,14,18; Zephaniah 2:2- 3; Zec 14:1; Malachi 4:5; Acts 2:20; 1Corinthians 5:5; 2Corinthians 1:14; 1Thessalonians 5:2 and 2Peter 3:10.

- day of the Son of man ('the lifetime of Jesus as reported in the Gospel accounts') is in: Luke 17:24.
- day of Jesus Christ ('the day we meet Jesus Christ in death or the 'Rapture') is in: Philippians 1:6.
- day of Christ ('the 1,000- years reign of Christ') is in: Philippians 1:10; 2:16; 2Thessalonians 2:2.
- day of temptation ('40 year wandering of Jews in the desert') is in: Hebrews 3:8.
- day of visitation ('Second Coming of Christ') is in: 1Peter 2:12.
- last days ('Church Age') is in: 2Peter 3:3.
- day of the voice of the seventh angel ('fulfillment of prophecy') is in: Revelation 10:7.
- day of the week ('Sunday') is in: 1Corinthians 16:2.
- day of (a person) ('the span their physical life') is in: Matthew 11:12; Matthew 23:30; Matthew 24:37; Mark 2:26; Luke 1:5; Luke 1:75; Luke 4:25; Luke 17:22; Luke 17:26; Luke 17:28; Acts 7:45; Acts 11:28; Hebrews 5:7; 1Peter 3:20; Revelation 11:6.

**Day of the Lord**- This particular "day" is spoken of often in the Bible. This is when our Lord Jesus Christ condemns all devils and lost people upon His return to Earth. Please see above for references.

**Deacon**- A servant of the church whose primary focus is to providing for the physical needs of the church. While they are to be apt to teach, they are under the authority of the pastor and can not usurp His authority in spiritual matters.

**Dead / Death / Die**- This is an ongoing process of corruption which ends with the thing which dies being separated from its source of life. Physical death is when the soul and spirit are permanently separated from the body. Spiritual death is also called the "second death" and is when the soul and spirit are permanently separated from God in the "lake of fire".

**Deaf**- Used either in the physical sense, which is an inability to hear, or figuratively as expressing unwillingness to hear the Divine message (Ps 58:4), or incapacity to understand it for want of spirituality (Ps 38:13).

**Dear**- This word has two meanings, 'costly or precious,' and 'beloved or endeared.' In the former sense it is used in the Prayer- Book version of Ps 116:13; 72:14, where it is not meant that the death or blood of the saints is well-pleasing to God, but that He accounts it precious, and will not let it go for nought.



**Dearth**- A scarcity of provisions (1Ki 17).

**Debate**- Dispute; argue; discuss.

**Debt / Debtor**- Obligated to.

**Decapolis**- An area with ten cities in the Promised Land.

**Decease**- To depart or to withdraw. Literally, departure; hence, departure from This life; death; applied to human beings only.

**Deceit**- Similar to fraud. Fraud is a legal term that specifies a violation of a law. Deceit is action verb which attempts to achieve the same harm as fraud but also encompasses actions which may not violate the letter of the law.

**Deceived**- Misled; led into error; beguiled; cheated; deluded.

**Deceiveth himself**- This person has a lifestyle of deliberately choosing to believe a lie no matter what evidence he sees against his chosen belief.

**Declare**- Made known; told explicitly; avowed; exhibited; manifested; published; proclaimed; recited.

**Decree**- Judicial decision, or determination of a litigated cause.

**Dedicate**- To set apart and consecrate to a divine Being, or to a sacred purpose; to devote to a sacred use, by a solemn act, or by religious ceremonies; as, to dedicate vessels, treasures, a temple, an altar, or a church, to God or to a religious use.

**Dedication**- The act of consecrating to a divine Being, or to a sacred use, often with religious solemnities; solemn appropriation; as the dedication of Solomons temple.

**Deed**- That which is done, acted or effected; an act; a fact; a word of extensive application, including whatever is done, good or bad, great or small.

**Deep**- Extending or being far below the surface; descending far downward; profound ; opposed to shallow; as deep water; a deep pit or well. Also used for the bottom of the ocean or Hell.

**Defame**- Slandered; dishonored or injured by evil reports. The opposite of fame.

**Defend**- To drive from; to thrust back; hence, to deny; to repel a demand, charge, or accusation; to oppose; to resist; the effect of which is to maintain ones own claims.

**Defense / Defence**- Any thing that opposes attack, violence, danger or injury; any thing that secures the person, the rights or the possessions of men; fortification; guard; protection; security. A wall, a parapet, a ditch, or a garrison, is the defense of a city or fortress. The Almighty is the defense of the righteous.

**Deferred**- To delay; to put off; to postpone to a future time; as, to defer the execution of a design. When thou vowest a vow, defer not to pay it. Eccles. 5.

**Defile**- To make unclean; to render foul or dirty; in a general sense. We are spiritually defiled when we sin in our heart.

**Defraud**- To deprive of right, either by obtaining something by deception or artifice, or by taking something wrongfully without the knowledge or consent of the owner; to cheat; to cozen; followed by of before the thing taken; as, to defraud; a man of his right. To defraud is an illegal act as defined by law. However, you can cheat someone even if you do not violate the legal definition of fraud.

**Degree**- A step; a distinct portion of space of indefinite extent; a space in progression; as, the army gained the hill by degrees; a balloon rises or descends by slow degrees; and figuratively, we advance in knowledge by slow degrees.

**Delay**- To prolong the time of acting, or proceeding; to put off; to defer.

**Delayeth**- A lifestyle of delaying.

**Delicately**- In a delicate manner; with nice regard to propriety and the feelings of others. 2. Daintily; luxuriously. They that live delicately are in kings courts. Luke 7:3.

**Deliciously**- adv. In a delicious manner; in a manner to please the taste or gratify the mind; sweetly; pleasantly; delightfully.

**Delight**- A high degree of pleasure, or satisfaction of mind; joy. His delight is in the law of the Lord. Ps. 1. 2. That which gives great pleasure.

**Delivered**- Freed; released; transferred or transmitted; passed from one to another; committed; yielded; surrendered; rescued; uttered; pronounced.

**DELLUSION** – false representation, illusion, error or mistake proceeding from false views

**Demand-** To ask or call for, as one who has a claim or right to receive what is sought; to claim or seek as due by right.

**Den-** a lair of wild beasts (Ps 10:9; 104:22; Job 37:8); the hole of a venomous reptile (Isa 11:8); a recess for secrecy "in dens and caves of the earth" (Heb 11:38); a resort of thieves (Mt 21:13; Mr 11:17).

**Deny / Denial-** To contradict; to gainsay; to declare a statement or position not to be true. We deny what another says, or we deny a proposition. We deny the truth of an assertion, or the assertion itself. The sense of This verb is often expressed by no or nay.

**Depart-** To go or move from. Depart from me, ye cursed, into everlasting fire. Matt. 25. It is followed by from, or from is implied before the place left.

**Depth-** Deepness; the distance or measure of a thing from the surface to the bottom, or to the extreme part downwards or inwards. The depth of a river may be ten feet. The depth of the ocean is unfathomable. The depth of a wound may be an inch. In a vertical direction, depth is opposed to height. Please see the note for John 6:7, at [ljc1611kjv.com/1kjv.com](http://ljc1611kjv.com/1kjv.com), for various Biblical measurements.

**Deputy-** A person appointed or elected to act for another, especially a person sent with a special commission to act in the place of another. 'In the O.T. governor of a district. 1Ki 22:47; Es 8:9; 9:3. In the N.T. proconsul, one who acted as governor of a Roman province with consular power. Ac 13:7- 8,12; 18:12; 19:38.

**Deride-** To laugh. To laugh at in contempt; to turn to ridicule or make sport of; to mock; to treat with scorn by laughter.

**Descend-** To move or pass from a higher to a lower place; to move, come or go downwards; to fall; to sink; to run or flow down; applicable to any kind of motion or of body.

**Describe-** To delineate or mark the form or figure; as, to describe a circle by the compasses.

**Desert-** an open tract for pasturage; a common (Joe 2:22). The same Hebrew word is rendered "wildernes," and is used of the country lying between Egypt and Palestine (Ge 21:14,21; Ex 4:27; 19:2; Jos 1:4), the wilderness of the wanderings. It was a grazing tract, where the flocks and herds of the Israelites found pasturage during the whole of their journey to the Promised Land.

**Desire-** An emotion or excitement of the mind, directed to the attainment or possession of an object from which

pleasure, sensual, intellectual or spiritual, is expected; a passion excited by the love of an object, or uneasiness at the want of it, and directed to its attainment or possession. Desire is a wish to possess some gratification or source of happiness which is supposed to be obtainable.

**Desolate-** Destitute or deprived of inhabitants; desert; uninhabited; denoting either stripped of inhabitants, or never having been inhabited; as a desolate isle; a desolate wilderness.

**Desolation-** The act of desolating destruction or expulsion of inhabitants; destruction; ruin; waste.

**Abomination of Desolation-** This exact expression occurs only in Mt 24:15 and Mr 13:14, referring to what had been revealed to Daniel in Da 12:11, where it is connected with the great tribulation (ver. 1) spoken of by the Lord in those Gospels. Da 9:27 shows that the time of the abomination is in the last half of the last of the seventy weeks of Daniel named in Da 9:24.

**Despair-** Hopelessness; a hopeless state; a destitution of hope or expectation. We are perplexed, but not in despair. 2 Cor. 4. All safety in despair of safety placed.

**Despite-** Extreme malice; violent hatred; malignity; malice irritated or enraged; active malignity; angry hatred. With all thy despite against the land of israel. Ezek. 25. 2. Defiance with contempt, or contempt of opposition. He will rise to fame in despite of his enemies.

**Despiteful-** Full of spite; malicious; malignant; as a despiteful enemy. Hater of God, despiteful, proud, boasters.

**Despise-** To contemn; to scorn; to disdain; to have the lowest opinion of. Fools despise wisdom and instruction. Prov. 1. Else he will hold to the one, and despise the other. Matt. 6. 2. To abhor.

**Despiseth-** Keeps on keeping on despising. A lifestyle of despising such as we see in prejudice.

**Destitute-** Not having or possessing; wanting; as destitute of virtue, or of peity; destitute of food and clothing. It differs from deprived, as it does not necessarily imply previous possession.

**Destroy-** To demolish; to pull down; to separate the parts of an edifice, the union of which is necessary to constitute the thing; as, to destroy a house or temple; to destroy a fortification.

**Destroyer-** The person who does the destroying. (Ex 12:23), the agent employed in the killing of the first- born;

the destroying angel or messenger of God. (Comp. 2Ki 19:35; 2Sa 24:15- 16; Ps 78:49; Ac 12:23).

**Destruction-** Destruction consists in the annihilation of the form of any thing; that form of parts which constitutes it what it is; as the destruction of grass or herbage by eating; of a forest, by cutting down the trees; or it denotes a total annihilation; as the destruction of a particular government; the destruction of happiness.

**Determinate-** What has been settled and is no longer in question.

**Determine-** Ended; concluded; decided; limited; fixed; settled; resolved; directed. Having a firm or fixed purpose, as a determined man; or manifesting a firm resolution, as a determined countenance.

**Device-** A plan or tool that is designed to accomplish a given purpose.

**Devil-** Evil spiritual beings. There are no daemons. That word is a lie created by devil- motivated men to cause people to not associate what is said with the beings and warnings found in the word of God. Please also see the Studies called [Jesus and Devils](#) and the [Word Study on Spirit](#), at [ljc1611kjv.com](http://ljc1611kjv.com)1kjv.com, for more on these beings.

**Devour-** To eat up; to eat with greediness; to eat ravenously, as a beast of prey, or as a hungry man.

**Devout-** Yielding a solemn and reverential attention to God in religious exercises, particularly in prayer. We must be constant and devout in the worship of God.

**Different-** Distinct; separate; not the same; as, we belong to different churches or nations. 2. Various or contrary; of various or contrary natures, forms or qualities; unlike; dissimilar; as different kinds of food or drink; different states of health; different shapes; different degrees of excellence.

**Diligence-** to love earnestly; to choose. 1. Steady application in business of any kind; constant effort to accomplish what is undertaken; exertion of body or mind without unnecessary delay or sloth; due attention; industry; assiduity.

**Dine-** To eat the chief meal of the day. This meal seems originally to have been taken about the middle of the day, at least in northern climates, as it still is by laboring people.

**Dinner-** The meal taken about the middle of the day; or the principle meal of the day, eaten between noon and evening. 2. An entertainment; a feast.

**Dip-** To plunge or immerse, for a moment or short time, in water or other liquid substance; to put into a fluid and withdraw.

**Direct-** Straight; right; as, to pass in a direct line from one body or place to another. It is opposed to crooked, winding, oblique. It is also opposed to refracted; as a direct ray of light.

**Disallow-** Not granted, permitted or admitted; disapproved; rejected.

**Disannul-** To annul; to make void; to deprive of authority or force; to nullify; to abolish; as, to disannul a law or an ordinance.

**Disannulleth-** A lifestyle of disannulling.

**Discern-** Distinguish; to see the difference between two or more things.

**Disciple-** A disciplined learner; a scholar; one who receives or professes to receive instruction from another; as the disciples of Jesus. A follower; an adherent to the doctrines of another.

**Discover-** Literally, to uncover; to remove a covering. Isaiah 22. To lay open to the view; to disclose; to show; to make visible; to expose to view something before unseen or concealed.

**Discreet-** Prudent; wise in avoiding errors or evil, and in selecting the best means to accomplish a purpose; circumspect; cautious; wary; not rash.

**Disease-** In its primary sense, pain, uneasiness, distress, and so used by Spenser; but in This sense, obsolete. 2. The cause of pain or uneasiness; distemper; malady; sickness; disorder; any state of a living body in which the natural functions of the organs are interrupted or disturbed, either by defective or preternatural action, without a disruptive of parts by violence, which is called a wound.

**Dishonesty-** Want of probity, or integrity in principle; faithlessness; a disposition to cheat or defraud, or to deceive and betray; applied to persons. 2. Violation of trust or of justice; fraud; treachery; any deviation from probity or integrity; applied to acts. 3. Unchastity; incontinence; lewdness. 4. Deceit; wickedness; shame. 2 Corinthians 4. Please also see the word honest.

**Dishonour / Dishonor-** Reproach; disgrace; ignominy; shame; whatever constitutes a stain or blemish in the reputation.

**Dismiss**- Sent away; permitted to depart; removed from office or employment.

**Disobedient**- Neglecting or refusing to obey; omitting to do what is commanded, or doing what is prohibited; refractory; not observant of duty or rules prescribed by authority; as children disobedient to parents; citizens disobedient to the laws.

**Dissension**- Disagreement in opinion, usually a disagreement which is violent, producing warm debates or angry words; contention in words; strife; discord; quarrel; breach of friendship and union.

**Dissolved**- Melted; liquefied; disunited; parted; loosed; relaxed; wasted away; ended.

**Disperse**- Scattered; driven apart; diffused; dissipated.

**Displease**- To offend; to make angry, sometimes in a slight degree. It usually expresses less than anger, vex, irritate and provoke. Applied to the Almighty in scripture, it may be considered as equivalent to anger.

**Disposed**- Set in order; arranged; placed; adjusted; applied; bestowed; inclined.

**Disposition**- The act of disposing, or state of being disposed. 2. Manner in which things or the parts of a complex body are placed or arranged; order; method; distribution; arrangement. We speak of the disposition of the infantry and cavalry of an army; the disposition of the trees in an orchard; the disposition of the several parts of an edifice, of the parts of a discourse, or of the figures in painting.

**Dispute**- Contested; opposed by words or arguments; litigated.

**Dissimulation**- The act of dissembling; a hiding under a false appearance; a feigning; false pretension; hypocrisy. Dissimulation may be simply concealment of the opinions, sentiments or purpose; but it includes also the assuming of a false or counterfeit appearance which conceals the real opinions or purpose.

**Distract**- Confusion from a multiplicity of objects crowding on the mind and calling the attention different ways; perturbation of mind; perplexity; as, the family was in a state of distraction. See 1 Corinthians 7.

**Distress**- The thing taken by distraining; that which is seized to procure satisfaction. A distress of household goods shall be impounded under cover. If the lessor does not find sufficient distress on the premises, etc. Extreme

pain; anguish of body or mind; as, to suffer great distress from the gout, or from the loss of near friends.

**Distressed**- To pain; to afflict with pain or anguish; applied to the body or the mind. Literally, to press or strain.

**Dispensation**- Distribution; the act of dealing out to different persons or places; as the dispensation of water indifferently to all parts of the earth. Be careful with this word. There is a religious doctrine based upon the 'dispensation of time' that is taught as a Bible doctrine but which does not fulfill the requirements to be a true Bible doctrine.

**Distribute**- To divide among two or more; to deal; to give or bestow in parts or portions. Moses distributed lands to the tribes of Israel.

**Ditch**- Any long, hollow receptacle of water.

**Divers**- Different; various.

**Divide**- Separating pre- defined units according to a precise procedure which produces a precise result.

**Divider**- The person or thing which divides.

**Dividing**- Ongoing mathematical function whereby you separate things according to precise rules and achieve a precise result.

**Divination**- Claiming to receive an answer from a spirit who can be God or a devil.

**Divine**- Pertaining to the true God; as the divine nature; divine perfections.

**Divorce**- A legal dissolution of the bonds of matrimony, or the separation of husband and wife by a judicial sentence. Be careful about this word as there is a lot of doctrinal error which is claimed to come from the Bible but which actually comes from a partial or a perversion of what the Bible actually says.

**Do it**- Actually do what the Bible says instead of simply claiming to do.

**Doctor**- An expert in an area of knowledge. A teacher.

**Doctrine**- Spiritual or religious teaching. Philosophy is actually a worldly religious teaching.

**Doctrines of Christ**- Spiritual teachings from God which cause the truly saved to mature spiritually.

**Dog**- A species of quadrupeds, belonging to the genus Canis, of many varieties, as the mastiff, the hound, the

spaniel, the shepherd's dog, the terrier, the harrier, the bloodhound. Dogs were held in great contempt by the Jews, but were worshipped, as well as cats, by the Egyptians.

**Dominion**- Sovereign or supreme authority; the power of governing and controlling.

**Door**- The means of entrance into a house, and of enclosing those within when shut, it is used in scripture symbolically for the way of entrance into Heaven and blessing. The Lord said, "I am the door: by me if any man enter in, he shall be saved." Salvation is only by Him.

**Dotting**- Regarding with excessive fondness and to have the intellect impaired.

**Double**- Twice the number or quantity.

**Doubtful**- Dubious; not settled in opinion; undetermined; wavering; hesitating; applied to persons; as, we are doubtful of a fact, or of the propriety of a measure.

**Doubtless**- Free from fear of danger; secure. Pretty child, sleep doubtless and secure.

**Dove**- A bird. Also used symbolically for the emblem of peace (Ge 8:7-12). After God's wrath for sin had been executed upon the earth, Noah sent the dove forth thrice; at the first sending she found no rest for the sole of her foot until she put herself in Noah's (or "comforter") hand, and was drawn into the ark; on the second trip, she brought back the olive leaf, the earnest of the restored earth; on the third trip, she was able to roam at large, no longer needing the ark's shelter.

**Dragon**- A flying serpent. It may signify any great serpent or sea monster, symbolical of a huge destructive creature. Nations doomed to destruction and desolation, including Jerusalem, are said to become habitations of dragons. Isa 34:13; 35:7; Jer 9:11; 10:22; 51:37.

**Draw / Drawn**- To pull. Be careful of other dictionaries which give several applications, instead of the simple single description, and let the readers believe they can choose which application they want to claim is the single description of this word.

**Draught**- A cesspool or receptacle for filth, 2Ki 10:27; Mt 15:17. Also, all the fishes taken at one drawing of a net, Lu 5:9.

**Dream**- God has frequently made use of dreams in communicating his will to men.

**Dressed**- Adjusted; made straight; put in order; prepared; trimmed; tilled; clothed; adorned; attired.

**Drew**- another past-tense form of the word draw.

**Drink / Drank**- To swallow liquor, for quenching thirst or other purpose. The symbolic meaning was well understood in the ancient cultures and is still considered significant by many religions of today.

**Drive**- To impel or urge forward by force; to force; to move by physical force. We drive a nail into wood with a hammer; the wind or a current drive a ship on the ocean.

**Drunk / Drunkenness**- Intoxication; inebriation; a state in which a person is overwhelmed or overpowered with spirituous liquors, so that his reason is disordered, and he reels or staggers in walking. Drunkenness renders some persons stupid, others gay, others sullen, others furious.

**Due**- Owed; that ought to be paid or done to another. That is due from me to another which contract, justice or propriety requires me to pay, and which he may justly claim as his right. Reverence is due to the creator; civility is due from one man to another. Money is due at the expiration of the credit given, or at the period promised.

**Dull**- Stupid; doltish; blockish; slow of understanding; as a lad of dull genius.

**Dumb**- Mute; silent; not speaking.

**Dung**- Used as manure (Lu 13:8); collected outside the city walls (Ne 2:13). Of sacrifices, burned outside the camp (Ex 29:14; Le 4:11; 8:17; Nu 19:5).

**Durst**- The past-tense of "dare". "Dare" is: To have courage to any purpose; to have strength of mind or hardihood to undertake anything; to be bold enough; not to be afraid; to venture; to be adventurous.

**Dust**- Small particles of matter found on the ground, out of which man was formed, to whom it was said, "Dust thou art, and unto dust shalt thou return." Ge 2:7; 3:19. To cast dust on the head was a sign of mourning (Jos 7:6); and to sit in dust, of extreme affliction (Isa 47:1). "Dust" is used to denote the grave (Job 7:21). "To shake off the dust from one's feet" against another is to renounce all future intercourse with him (Mt 10:14; Ac 13:51). To "lick the dust" is a sign of abject submission (Ps 72:9); and to throw dust at one is a sign of abhorrence (2Sa 16:13; comp. Ac 22:23).

**Duty**- That which a person owes to another; that which a person is bound, by any natural, moral or legal obligation,

to pay, do or perform. Obedience to princes, magistrates and the laws is the duty of every citizen and subject; obedience, respect and kindness to parents are duties of children; fidelity to friends is a duty; reverence, obedience and prayer to God are indispensable duties; the government and religious instruction of children are duties of parents which they cannot neglect without guilt.

**Dwell**- Inhabiting; residing; sojourning; continuing with fixed attention.

**Dying because of the truth**- The saved are to be willing to suffer anything, including death, in order to serve God.

## E

**Eagle**- Job 39:27- 30, a large and very powerful bird of prey, hence called the King of birds.

**Ear**- The organ of hearing; the organ by which sound is perceived; and in general, both the external and internal part is understood by the term.

**Ears to Hear**- The ability to hear spiritual messages from God. Lost and carnal people do not have "ears to hear". If you are willing to obey God then receive This instruction and wisdom. Use it to motivate you to obey.

**Early**- In advance of something else; prior in time; forward; as early fruit, that is, fruit that comes to maturity before other fruit; early growth; early manhood; early old age or decrepitude, that is, premature old age. So an early spring; an early harvest. 2. First; being at the beginning; as early dawn. 3. Being in good season; as, the court met at an early hour.

**Earnest**- As an adjective: Ardent in the pursuit of an object; eager to obtain; having a longing desire; warmly engaged or incited.

As a noun: Seriousness; a reality; a real event; as opposed to jesting or feigned appearance.

**Earth**- The physical planet we reside on, also soil or ground.

**Earthen**- Made of earth; made of clay; as an earthen vessel; earthen ware.

**Earthy**- Of this world.

**Earthquake**- A shaking of the Earth. The first earthquake mentioned is when Elijah was told to stand before the Lord.

**Ease**- Rest; an undisturbed state. Applied to the body, freedom from pain, disturbance, excitement or annoyance.

**East**- The direction from which the sun rises every day. Nearly all the references in scripture to the East or to other quarters are of course reckoned from Palestine; so that 'children of the East,' 'men of the East,' point out Assyria, Babylon, etc. THE EAST WIND was distressing and destructive to vegetation, Ge 41:6,23,27; dangerous to vessels at sea, Ps 48:7; Eze 27:26; and is symbolical of the withering power of God's judgements. Ho 13:15.

**Easy**- Quiet; being at rest; free from pain, disturbance or annoyance.

**Eat**- To consume or destroy, both physically and spiritually' They "eat up my people as they eat bread." Ps 14:4; cf. Pr 30:14; Hab 3:14; 2Ti 2:17. Also for receiving, digesting, and delighting in God's words.

**Edge**- In a general sense, the extreme border or point of any thing; as the edge of the table; the edge of a book; the edge of cloth. It coincides nearly with border, brink, margin. It is particularly applied to the sharp border, the thin cutting extremity of an instrument, as the edge of an ax, razor, knife or scythe; also, to the point of an instrument, as the edge of a sword. 2. Figuratively, that which cuts or penetrates; that which wounds or injures; as the edge of slander. It is also a symbol of divine chastisement (De 32:25; Ps 7:12; 78:62), and of a slanderous tongue (Ps 57:4; 64:3; Pr 12:18). The word of God is likened also to a sword (Heb 4:12; Eph 6:17; Re 1:16). Gideon's watchword was, "The sword of the Lord" (Jg 7:20).

**Edify / Edification**- To build, in a literal sense. Not now used. 2. To instruct and improve the mind in knowledge generally, and particularly in moral and religious knowledge, in faith and holiness.

**Effect**- That which is produced by an agent or cause; as the effect of luxury; the effect of intemperance. Please also see affect as these two are often confused.

**Egypt**- Egypt is a physical country in northern Africa. It is used, symbolically, for a type of the world (way of thinking, etc) within the Bible.

**Elder**- Is associated with the word "older". Age is the standard of dignity in a patriarchal system. Hence, the office of elder was the basis of government; as in our "alderman". There is considerable doctrinal error taught

about this word. Many, wrongly, claim that it is only applied to pastors. Many also deny that "elders" were ordained in the early church.

**Elect / Election-** This word is also a source of much doctrinal error. God "elects" a way, not people. People who are in God's way for dealing with the things of This Earth. Please also see predestine.

**Element-** In its primary sense, as denoting the first principles or constituents of things, it is used in 2Pe 3:10: The elements shall be dissolved. In a secondary sense it denotes the first principles of any art or science. In This sense it is used in GA 4:3,9; Col 2:8,20, where the expressions, elements of the world, week and beggarly elements, denote that state of religious knowledge existing among the Jews before the coming of Christ, the rudiments of religious teaching. They are of the world, because they are made up of types which appeal to the senses.

**Eleven-** A basic number which also has symbolic meaning in the Bible. However, like all symbols, it sometimes has that meaning and at other times does not. There is much doctrinal error due to people claiming that certain symbols always have their symbolic meaning. It is used to identify the twelve disciples / apostles minus Judas Iscariot. It also was considered a symbol of internal conflict and rebellion. It was compared to the unbalancing of the number ten, a pillar in the universe, number eleven represented disorder.

**Elias-** The New Testament name for the Old Testament prophet of Elijah.

**Eloquent-** Having the power of oratory; speaking with fluency, propriety, elegance and animation; as an eloquent orator; an eloquent preacher. 1. Composed with elegance and spirit; elegant and animated; adapted to please, affect and persuade.

**Embrace-** To seize eagerly; to lay hold on; to receive or take with willingness that which is offered.

**Emerald-** A precious stone of a rich green color, upon which its value chiefly depends. This gem was the first in the second row on the breastplate of the high priest: Ex 28:18; 39:11. Other dictionaries try to give other descriptions of this stone, which means that, if they reject the current stone which has this name, then they are not sure what the stone was like.

**Empty-** Containing nothing, or nothing but air; as an empty chest; empty space. To exhaust; to make void or destitute; to deprive of the contents; as, to empty a vessel; to empty a well or a cistern.

**Emulation-** produces the same result using a different method and working in a different environment.

**End-** Nothing further. In Heb 13:7, we have the meaning of outcome. In 1Co 10:13, where it is rendered escape.

**End of the World-** This phrase identifies when the current evil governments end, all evil sinful men are cast into Hell and our Lord Jesus Christ sets up His kingdom to rule and reign all of the Earth.

**Endeavour / Endeavor-** An effort; an essay; an attempt; an exertion of physical strength, or the intellectual powers, towards the attainment of an object. An effort; an essay; an attempt; an exertion of physical strength, or the intellectual powers, towards the attainment of an object.

**Endure-** To last; to continue in the same state without perishing; to remain; to abide. The Lord shall endure forever. Ps.9.

**Enemy-** A foe; an adversary. A private enemy is one who hates another and wishes him injury, or attempts to do him injury to gratify his own malice or ill will. According to the Bible, Satan is our main spiritual enemy but so also are all devils.

**Engrave-** Cut or marked, as with a chisel or graver; imprinted; deeply impressed.

**Enjoin-** To enjoin is to set or lay to or on. 1. To order or direct with urgency; to admonish or instruct with authority; to command.

**Enjoy-** To feel or perceive with pleasure; to take pleasure or satisfaction in the possession or experience of.

**Enlarge-** To make greater in quantity or dimensions; to extend in limits, breadth or side; to expand in bulk.

**Enlighten-** Rendered light; illuminated; instructed; informed; furnished with clear views. Applied spiritually it means to receive spiritual understanding from God (He is the source of spiritual light).

**Enmity-** the quality of being an enemy; the opposite of friendship; ill will; hatred; unfriendly dispositions; malevolence. It expresses more than aversion and less than malice, and differs from displeasure in denoting a fixed or rooted hatred, whereas displeasure is more transient.

**Enoch-** The reference in Jude tells us that he was a prophet (was probably the first) who prophesied the return of Christ to rule and reign on This Earth.

**Enough**- That satisfies desire, or gives content; that may answer the purpose; that is adequate to the wants.

**Enrich**- Made rich or wealthy; fertilized; supplied with that which is desirable, useful or ornamental.

**Ensure**- to follow as a consequence of premises; as, from these facts or this evidence, the argument will ensue.

**Entangle**- Twisted together; interwoven in a confused manner; intricate; perplexed; involved; embarrassed; ensnared.

**Enter**- to leave one place and go into another place.

**Entice**- To incite or instigate, by exciting hope or desire; usually in a bad sense; as, to entice one to evil. Hence, to seduce; to lead astray; to induce to sin, by promises or persuasions.

**Entreat**- To make an earnest petition or request.

**Envy**- To feel uneasiness, mortification or discontent, at the sight of superior excellence, reputation or happiness enjoyed by another; to repine at another's prosperity; to fret or grieve one's self at the real or supposed superiority of another, and to hate him on that account.

**Epaphras**- Little is known about Epaphras other than that he had traveled with Paul and others on missionary trips.

**Ephesus**- Is in Asia Minor. The church there was started by Paul. It receive an Epistle from Paul and is one of the seven churches written to in Revelation.

**EPISTLE**- letter

**Equal**- A mathematical function whereby two items are the same in every aspect. Equal is different than equivalent in that equivalent items differ in some attribute. Two squares of same size and dimensions are equal. A circle and a square which enclose the same area are equivalent but not equal.

**Error**- A wandering or deviation from the truth; a mistake in judgment, by which men assent to or believe what is not true. Error may be voluntary, or involuntary. Voluntary, when men neglect or pervert the proper means to inform the mind; involuntary, when the means of judging correctly are not in their power.

**Esau**- Son of Isaac and brother of Jacob. Apparently died lost and fathered lost people.

**Escape**- To flee from and avoid; to get out of the way; to shun; to obtain security from; to pass without harm.

**Eschew**- from old French *eschever*, "to flee from" (Job 1:1,8; 2:3; 1Pe 3:11).

**Especially / Specially**- Particularly; in a manner beyond what is common, or out of the ordinary course.

**Espouse**- (2Sa 3:14), to betroth. The espousal was a ceremony of betrothing, a formal agreement between the parties then coming under obligation for the purpose of marriage. Espousals are in the East frequently contracted years before the marriage is celebrated. It is referred to as figuratively illustrating the relations between God and his people (Jer 2:2; Mt 1:18; 2Co 11:2).

**Establish**- To set and fix firmly or unalterably; to settle permanently.

**Estate**- Condition or circumstances of any person or thing, whether high or low. Luke 1.

**Esteem**- To set a value on, whether high or low; to estimate; to value.

**Eternal**- Without beginning or end of existence. The eternal God is thy refuge. Deut.33. This is distinguished from everlasting which has a beginning but no end.

**Eternal Life**- A title and description of our "Lord Jesus Christ". We are given "eternal life" like a woman is given a husband in marriage. We are given an ongoing personal relationship with our "Lord Jesus Christ". We are not given "eternal life" for our own but are given "everlasting life" for our own since our personal salvation has a starting point.

**Ethiopia**- A country in Northern Africa which lies to the south of Egypt. The "queen of the south" came from there and the "eunuch" came from there. They produced the black Jews and Christians in the early church.

**Eunuch**- The Lord distinguished three classes of eunuchs: those that were thus born; those emasculated by men; and those who had made themselves such for the kingdom of heaven's sake. Mt 19:12. It is the second class that are otherwise mentioned in scripture. They often became men of influence in the eastern courts, and had care of the harems; and where there were several there was one called their 'prince.' Jer 29:2; Da 1:3- 18; Ac 8:27.

**Euphrates**- This river is first mentioned in connection with the garden of Eden, but cannot be thereby traced. Ge 2:14. It was the N.E. boundary of the land promised to Abraham, as the river of Egypt was the S.W. Ge 15:18. It is



called the great river, the river Euphrates, De 1:7, and at times is merely called 'the river'.

**Evangelist-** A "publisher of glad tidings;" a missionary preacher of the gospel (Eph 4:11). This title is applied to Philip (Ac 21:8), who appears to have gone from city to city preaching the word (Ac 8:4,40). Judging from the case of Philip, evangelists had neither the authority of an apostle, nor the gift of prophecy, nor the responsibility of pastoral supervision over a portion of the flock. They were itinerant preachers, having it as their special function to carry the gospel to places where it was previously unknown.

**Even-** Same weight as when the two sides of a balancing scale have the same height, the two sides of the scale contain items of the same weight. This word is used to express when two things have the same importance.

**Evening-** The period from sunset till night. This was naturally the closing of the day, for God called the light 'day:' cf. Joh 11:9. "The evening was, and the mourning was, one day:" that is, there was not day continuously, but through the alternation of night and mourning day succeeded day. Ge 1:5. The common way of reckoning the day among the Jews was from evening until the next evening. This is distinguished from "the even" and "eventide" in the Bible.

**Everlasting-** Ever and lasting. Lasting or enduring for ever; existing or continuing without end; immortal.

**Every Word-** People who change any single word in God's word are serving devils and perverting the true word of God. We are commanded: "man doth not live by bread only, but by every word that proceedeth out of the mouth of the LORD doth man live" (Deuteronomy 8:3; Proverbs 30:5; Matthew 4:4; Matthew 18:16; Luke 4:4).

**Evil-** to be unjust or injurious, to defraud. 1. Both the source and consequence of things which people consider to be really really bad.

**Evildoer-** Someone who does evil.

**Evil peaking-** Saying evil things against another person or thing.

**Evil Heart-** Having a heart which is like devils. Our heart controls the same things as our soul only where the soul deals with the long term the heart deals with the short term and we control our heart directly while the soul is the accumulated actions of our heart. Both are the way we think (mind), the way we emotionally respond to circumstances (emotions) and the method we use to make decisions (will).

**Evil Workers-** One that works or one that performs evil things ongoing.

**Evidence / Evidently-** adv. Clearly; obviously; plainly; in a manner to be seen and understood; in a manner to convince the mind; certainly; manifestly. The evil of sin may be evidently proved by its mischievous effect.

**Exact-** Precise; not different in the least. This is the exact sum or amount, or the exact time.

We have an exact model for imitation.

**Exalt-** To raise high; to elevate. To elevate in power, wealth, rank or dignity; as, to exalt one to a throne, to the chief magistracy, to a bishopric.

**Examine-** To inspect carefully, with a view to discover truth or the real state of a thing; as, to examine a ship to know whether she is sea-worthy, or a house to know whether repairs are wanted.

**Example / Ensample-** A pattern; a copy; a mode; that which is proposed to be imitated. This word, when applied to material things, is now generally written sample, as a sample of cloth; but example is sometimes used.

**Exceed-** Going beyond; surpassing; excelling; outdoing.

**Excel-** To go beyond; to exceed; to surpass in good qualities or laudable deeds; to outdo. Excelling others, these were great; Thou greater still, must these excel.

**Excellent-** Being of great virtue or worth and distinguished for superior attainments.

**Excess-** Literally, that which exceeds any measure or limit, or which exceeds something else, or a going beyond a just line or point. Hence, superfluity; that which is beyond necessity or wants; as an excess of provisions; excess of light.

**Except-** To take or leave out of any number specified; to exclude; as, of the thirty persons present and concerned in a riot, we must except two. To take or leave out any particular or particulars, from a general description. To object; to make an objection or objections; usually followed by to; sometimes by against.

**Exchange-** In commerce, to give one thing or commodity for another; to alienate or transfer the property of a thing and receive in compensation for it something of supposed equal value; to barter; and in vulgar language, to swap; to truck. It differs from sell, only in the kind of compensation. To sell is to alienate for

money; to exchange is to alienate one commodity for another; as, to exchange horses; to exchange oxen for corn.

**Exclude-** Properly, to thrust out or eject.

**Excuse-** To pardon; to free from the imputation of fault or blame; to acquit of guilt. We excuse a person in our own minds, when we acquit him of guilt or blame; or we excuse him by a declaration of that acquittal.

**Execute-** Literally, to follow out or through. Hence, to perform; to do; to effect; to carry into complete effect; to complete; to finish. We execute a purpose, a plan, design or scheme; we execute a work undertaken, that is, we pursue it to the end.

**Exercise-** Use; practice; the exertions and movements customary in the performance of business; as the exercise of an art, trade, occupation, or profession.

**EXHORT-** encourage them, lift them up, encourage people to grow up.

**Exorcist-** They cast our devils. Lost exorcists do so with the cooperation of devils to support doctrines from devils and people who believe them die lost and go to Hell.

**Expectation-** The act of expecting or looking forward to a future event with at least some reason to believe the event will happen.

**Expedient-** Literally, hastening; urging forward. Hence, tending to promote the object proposed; fit or suitable for the purpose; proper under the circumstances. Many things may be lawful, which are not expedient.

**Expel-** Driven out or away; forced to leave; banished; exiled; excluded.

**Experience-** Trial, or a series of trials or experiments; active effort or attempt to do or to prove something, or repeated efforts.

**Experiment-** A trial; an act or operation designed to discover some unknown truth, principle or effect, or to establish it when discovered.

**Expert-** Properly, experienced; taught by use, practice or experience; hence, skillful; well instructed; having familiar knowledge of.

**Expire-** To emit the last breath, as an animal; to die; to breathe the last.

**Express-** To utter; to declare in words; to speak. He expressed his ideas or his meaning with precision. His views were expressed in very intelligible terms.

**Expound-** To explain; to lay open the meaning; to clear of obscurity; to interpret; as, to expound a text of scripture; to expound a law.

**Extort-** To draw from by force or compulsion; to wrest or wring from by physical force, by menace, duress, violence, authority, or by an illegal means.

**Eye-** The organ of sight or vision; properly, the globe or ball movable in the orbit.

**Eyes to See-** Having the ability to see spiritual things from God.

**Eyesalve-** A Phrygian powder mentioned by Galen, for which the medical school of Laodicea seems to have been famous (see Ramsay, The Letters to the Seven Churches of Asia), but the figurative reference is to the restoring of spiritual vision.

F

**Fable-** A fable is a narrative in which being irrational, and sometimes inanimate, are, for the purpose of moral instruction, feigned to act and speak with human interests and passions. The fable differs from the parable in that - - 1. The parable always relates what actually takes place, and is true to fact, which the fable is not; and 2. The parable teaches the higher heavenly and spiritual truths, but the fable only earthly moralities.

**Face-** In a general sense, the surface of a thing, or the side which presents itself to the view of a spectator; as the face of the earth; the face of the waters.

**Fade-** To lose color; to tend from a stronger or brighter color to a more faint shade of the same color, or to lose a color entirely.

**Fail-** To become deficient; to be insufficient; to cease to be abundant for supply; or to be entirely wanting. We say, in a dry season, the springs and streams fail, or are failing, before they are entirely exhausted.

**Fair-** Clear; free from spots; free from a dark hue; white; as a fair skin; a fair complexion. This word has several different applications within the word of God.

**FAITH** – an action word that is based upon a belief in a promise found within the Bible with the action dictated by the Bible and the understanding that our action does not force God to act nor determines when or how God acts but proves that of our own free will we are giving God permission to act in and through our life to do what He promised within His word. Before acting, someone only has a belief.

**Faith: Abraham's-** Paul uses Abraham as an example to show that he was not under the Law but obtained righteousness through the promise of God by Abraham acting in faith. We are saved by acting in faith like Abraham did. Neither the coming of the Mosaic Law, nor the taking away of it, changed the salvation based upon the promise of God.

**Faith Makes us not ashamed-** Please see the note for Romans 10:11 at [ljc1611kjv.com1kjv.com](http://ljc1611kjv.com1kjv.com).

**Faith: Unfeigned-** Not feigned; not counterfeit; not hypocritical; real; sincere. Unfeigned faith is faith which has been proven to be true.

**Faithful-** Firm in adherence to the truth and to the duties of religion. Be thou faithful unto death, and I will give thee a crown of life. Rev. 2. Only faithful saved people will be allowed to return with Christ to rule this world.

**Faint-** weak; languid; inclined to swoon; as, to be rendered faint by excessive evacuations. We are commanded to "faint not" in our faith.

**Fame-** To make famous. 2. To report. Please also see "defame".

**Fare-** To be in any state, good or bad; to be attended with any circumstances or train of events, fortunate or unfortunate.

**Farewell-** Go well; originally applied to a person departing, but by custom now applied both to those who depart and those who remain. It expresses a kind wish, a wish of happiness to those who leave or those who are left.

**Farm-** Every Hebrew had a certain portion of land assigned to him as a possession (Nu 26:33- 56). In Egypt the lands all belonged to the king, and the husbandmen were obliged to give him a fifth part of the produce; so in Palestine Jehovah was the sole possessor of the soil, and the people held it by direct tenure from him. By the enactment of Moses, the Hebrews paid a tithe of the produce to Jehovah, which was assigned to the priesthood. Military service when required was also to be rendered by every Hebrew at his own expense. The occupation of a

husbandman was held in high honour (1Sa 11:5- 7; 1Ki 19:19; 2Ch 26:10)

**Farthing-** Mt 10:29; Lu 12:6. Greek assarion, i.e., a small as, which was a Roman coin equal to a tenth of a denarius or drachma, nearly equal to a halfpenny of our money.

**Fashion-** The make or form of any thing; the state of any thing with regard to its external appearance; shape; as the fashion of the ark, or of the tabernacle.

**Fall-** To drop from a higher place; to descend by the power of gravity alone. Rain falls from the clouds; a man falls from his horse; ripe fruits fall from trees; an ox falls into a pit. I beheld Satan as lightning fall from Heaven. Luke 10.

**False-** Not true; not conformable to fact; expressing what is contrary to that which exists, is done, said or thought. Please also see the Study called False things according to the Bible at [ljc1611kjv.com1kjv.com](http://ljc1611kjv.com1kjv.com).

**Famine-** Scarcity of food; dearth; a general want of provisions sufficient for the inhabitants of a country or besieged place.

**Fan-** A winnowing shovel by which grain was thrown up against the wind that it might be cleansed from broken straw and chaff (Isa 30:24; Jer 15:7; Mt 3:12).

**FAST** – Literally, set, stopped, fixed, or pressed close. Hence, close; tight; as, make fast the door; take fast hold.

**Fasten-** Made firm or fast; fixed firmly; impressed.

**Fat-** Closely associated with the blood in sacrifices, and as being the richest part, appropriated peculiarly to God (Le 3:16- 17); i.e. the internal fat, the "sweet fat" or suet, chelev; the fat of the kidneys, the sign of the animal's excellence and vigor.

**Father-** the man who passes his character to the son.

**Fatling-** A fatted animal for slaughter (2Sa 6:13; Isa 11:6; Eze 39:18. Comp. Mt 22:4, where the word used in the original, sitistos, means literally "corn- fed;" i.e., installed, fat).

**Fault-** Properly, an erring or missing; a failing; hence, an error or mistake; a blunder; a defect; a blemish; whatever impairs excellence; applied to things.

**Favor / Favour-** Kind regard; kindness; countenance; propitious aspect; friendly disposition.

**Fear-** A painful emotion or passion excited by an expectation of evil, or the apprehension of impending

danger. Fear expresses less apprehension than dread, and dread less than terror and fright. The force of This passion, beginning with the most moderate degree, may be thus expressed, fear, dread, terror, fright. Fear is accompanied with a desire to avoid or ward off the expected evil. Fear is an uneasiness of mind, upon the thought of future evil likely to befall us. The saved are commanded to "fear the Lord". Please see the Study called: [The Fear of The Lord](#) on [ljc1611kjv.com1kjv.com](#).

**Fear them Not-** The saved are commanded to "fear nothing except the Lord". Please see the Study called: [The Fear of The Lord](#) on [ljc1611kjv.com1kjv.com](#).

**Feast-** Done as a mark of hospitality (Ge 19:3; 2Sa 3:20; 2Ki 6:23); on occasions of domestic joy (Lu 15:23; Ge 21:8); on birthdays (Ge 40:20; Job 1:4; Mt 14:6); and on the occasion of a marriage (Jg 14:10; Ge 29:22).

**Feeble-** Weakness of body or mind, from any cause; imbecility; infirmity; want of strength, physical or intellectual; as feebleness of the body or limbs; feebleness of the mind or understanding.

**Feed-** To give food to; as, to feed an infant; to feed horses and oxen. To supply with provisions. We have flour and meat enough to feed the army a month.

**Feel / Felt-** To perceive by the touch; to have sensation excited by contact of a thing with the body or limbs. The word "felt" is the past-tense form of the word "feel".

**Feet-** Plural of foot. The end of the leg which people walk on. To "cover the feet" was the delicate expression for easing oneself, preparatory to which the loose garment was let fall to cover the person (1Sa 24:3; compare margin 2Ki 18:27). Putting the feet on captives' necks, as Joshua did (Jos 10:24), symbolizes complete mastery (Ps 110:1; 1Co 15:25; Isa 60:14).

**Feign-** To invent or imagine; to form an idea or conception of something not real.

**Fellow-** A companion; an associate. In youth I had twelve fellows, like myself.

**Fellowhelper-** Preachers who help the main pastor.

**Fellowlabourers-** Non- Preachers who help the main pastor.

**Fellowship-** Companionship; society; consort; mutual association of persons on equal and friendly terms; familiar intercourse. Best thought of as: 'Two fellows in the same ship working together to achieve the same goal'.

If the people are not working together to achieve the same goal then they are not truly "fellows".

**Female-** Among humans and animals, one of that sex which conceives and brings forth young. 2. Among plants, that which produces fruit; that which bears the pistil and receives the pollen of the male flowers. (I owned property with hickory trees which have a male and a female form).

**Fervent-** Hot; boiling; as a fervent summer; fervent blood. Ardent, hot in emotional temper; vehement.

**Fetch-** To go and bring, or simply to bring, that is, to bear a thing towards or to a person. We will take men to fetch victuals for the people. Judges 20.

**Fetters-** Shackles for the feet. It is said of Joseph that his feet were hurt with fetters. Ps 105:18.

**Fever-** A disease, characterized by an accelerated pulse, with increase of heat, impaired functions, diminished strength, and often with preternatural thirst. Heat; agitation; excitement by any thing that strongly affects the passions.

**Field-** Cultivated land (as field is derived from felling trees), but unenclosed; whereas the English "field" implies enclosure. In contrast to the adjoining wilderness (Ge 33:19; 36:35).

**Fierce-** The primary sense of which is wild, running, rushing. Vehement; violent; furious; rushing; impetuous; as a fierce wind.

**Fig-** First mentioned in Ge 3:7. The fig- tree is mentioned (De 8:8) as one of the valuable products of Palestine. It was a sign of peace and prosperity (1Ki 4:25; Mic 4:4; Zec 3:10). Figs were used medicinally (2Ki 20:7), and pressed together and formed into "cakes" as articles of diet (1Sa 30:12; Jer 24:2).

Our Lord's cursing the fig- tree near Bethany (Mr 11:13) has occasioned much perplexity from the circumstance, as mentioned by the evangelist, that "the time of figs was not yet." The explanation of the words, however, lies in the simple fact that the fruit of the fig- tree appears before the leaves, and hence that if the tree produced leaves it ought also to have had fruit. It ought to have had fruit if it had been true to its "pretensions," in showing its leaves at This particular season. "This tree, so to speak, vaunted itself to be in advance of all the other trees, challenged the passer-by that he should come and refresh himself with its fruit. Yet when the Lord accepted its challenge and drew near, it proved to be but as the others, without fruit as they; for indeed, as the evangelist observes, the time of figs had not yet arrived. Its fault, if one may use the word, lay in its

pretensions, in its making a show to run before the rest when it did not so indeed"

**Fight**- Contending in battle; striving for victory or conquest.

**FIGURE**- Is a picture. The form of any thing as expressed by the outline or terminating extremities. Flowers have exquisite figures.

**Fill**- Properly, to press; to crowd; to stuff. Hence, to put or pour in, till the thing will hold no more. Please also see fulfill.

**Filth**- Dirt; any foul matter; any thing that soils or defiles; waste matter; nastiness. 2. Corruption; pollution; any thing that sullies or defiles the moral character. To purify the soul from the dross and filth of sensual delights. See Foul and Defile.

**Filthiness**- The state of being filthy. 2. Foulness; dirtiness; filth; nastiness. Carry forth the filthiness out of the holy place. 2Chron. 29.

**Find**- Literally, to come to; to meet; hence, to discover by the eye; to gain first sight or knowledge of something lost; to recover either by searching for it or by accident.

**Finish**- Complete; as, to finish a house; to finish a journey. Thus the heavens and the earth were finished. Gen. 2.

**Finger**- One of the extreme parts of the hand, a small member shooting to a point. The finger or fingers of God, in scripture, signify his power, strength or operation.

**Fire**- The primary sense is, to rage, to act with violent excitement. 1. To consume with fire; to reduce to ashes by the action of heat or fire; frequently with up; as, to burn up wood.

**Fire from Heaven**- In every reference it is speaking, directly or indirectly, of: 'judgment from God visible to men'.

**First Day of the Week**- Sunday.

**Firstbegotten**- First physical child that is conceived.

**Firstborn**- First physical child that is born.

**Firstfruits**- The first new life from plant or animal. The firstfruits were a special offering whereby God's people were to offer the first fruits of everything based upon the promise of God to bless the rest of their harvest.

**Fish**- The Hebrews recognized fish as one of the great divisions of the animal kingdom, and as such gave them a place in the account of the creation: Ge 1:21,28. What is currently called seafood was not acknowledged as a type of fish.

**Fisher**- One who is employed in catching fish. 'Besides its literal sense (Lu 5:2), This word is also applied by our Lord to his disciples in a figurative sense (Mt 4:19; Mr 1:17).

**Fit**- suitable.

**Flame**- A blaze; burning vapor; vapor in combustion; or according to modern chemistry, hydrogen or any inflammable gas, in a state of combustion, and naturally ascending in a stream from burning bodies being specifically lighter than common air. The phrase "flame of fire" is used symbolically for: ' the holiness of God (Ex 3:2; Re 2:18), as indicating "the intense, all-consuming operation of his holiness in relation to sin.

**Flatter**- To soothe by praise; to gratify self- love by praise or obsequiousness; to please a person by applause or favorable notice, by respectful attention, or by any thing that exalts him in his own estimation, or confirms his good opinion of himself.

**Flax**- Plant used to make linen cloth. The rich alone wore fine linen (Lu 16:19). The phrase: "smoking flax shall he not quench" means: 'Jesus will not spiritually kill even the weakest person.

Flee- To run with rapidity, as from danger; to attempt to escape; to hasten from danger or expected evil.

**Fled**- The past- tense form of flee.

**FLESH** – A compound substance forming a large part of an animal, consisting of the softer solids, as distinguished from the bones and the fluids. Under the general appellation of flesh, we include the muscles, fat, glands etc., which invest the bones and are covered with the skin. It is sometimes restricted to the muscles. Symbolically, this word is used for the motivation of the body to fulfill the lust. Please see the note for Romans 8:1, in [ljc1611kjv.com](http://ljc1611kjv.com) [1kjv.com](http://1kjv.com), for several spiritual applications of this word.

**Flight**- The act of fleeing; the act of running away, to escape danger or expected evil; hasty departure. Pray ye that your flight be not in winter. Matt. 24.

**Flock**- A company or collection; applied to sheep and other small animals.

**Flood**- A great flow of water; a body of moving water; particularly, a body of water, rising, swelling and overflowing land not usually covered with water.

**Floor**- That part of a building or room on which we walk; the bottom or lower part, consisting, in modern houses, of boards, planks or pavement; as the floor of a house, room, bar, stable or outhouse.

**Flower**- In botany, that part of a plant which contains the organs of fructification, with their coverings. All plants have flowers because that is how they reproduce.

**Flying**- Moving in air by means of wings; passing rapidly; springing; bursting.

**Foal**- The young of the equine genus of quadrupeds and of either sex; a colt; a filly.

**Foam**- To throw out with rage or violence; with out. Foaming out their own shame. Jude 13.

**Foes**- An enemy; one who entertains personal enmity, hatred, grudge or malice against another. A man's foes shall be they of his own household. Matt. 10.

**Follow**- To go after or behind; to walk, ride or move behind, but in the same direction. Soldiers will usually follow a brave officer.

**Follow After**- To go after or behind and act the same way as the leader.

**follow me**- To go after Jesus and act the same way as the He did.

**Fold**- An enclosure for flocks to rest together (Isa 13:20).

**Folly**- Weakness of intellect; imbecility of mind. want of understanding. A fool layeth open his folly. Prov. 13.

**Food**- In a general sense, whatever is eaten by animals for nourishment, and whatever supplies nutriment to plants.

**Fool**- One who is destitute of reason, or the common powers of understanding. Someone can be born an idiot but most fools have the capacity to think and reason, which they refuse to use. The phrase "condemnation of fools" described the punishment that God gives to fools.

**Foolish**- Void of understanding or sound judgment; weak in intellect; applied to general character. Unwise; imprudent; acting without judgment or discretion in particular things.

**Foot**- The end of the leg which people walk on. To "cover the feet" was the delicate expression for easing oneself, preparatory to which the loose garment was let fall to cover the person (1Sa 24:3; compare margin 2Ki 18:27).

**Footstool**- A stool to rest the feet on while sitting. 2Ch 9:18. The earth is the footstool of God's throne in the heavens. Isa 66:1; Mt 5:35. It is symbolical of 'the place of rest'.

**FOR** – A cause which occurs in the future. Looking unto Jesus the author and finisher of our faith; who for the joy that was set before him endured the cross Heb 12;2.

**Forbearance**- Ceasing; pausing; withholding from action; exercising patience and indulgence. Patient; long suffering.

**Forbid**- To prohibit; to interdict; to command to forbear or not to do. The laws of God forbid us to swear. Good manners also forbid us to use profane language.

**Force**- Strength; active power; vigor; might; energy that may be exerted; that physical property in a body which may produce action or motion in another body, or may counteract such motion. By the force of the muscles we raise a weight, or resist an assault.

**Forehead**- The part of the face which extends from the hair on the top of the head to the eyes. Used symbolically for: Impudence; confidence; assurance; audaciousness. Also, the forehead is made the seat of boldness of speech and act (Eze 3:7- 9). This is one of the places where "the mark of the beast" will be put to show their rebellion against God.

**Foreknow**- Knowledge before an event occurs. This requires the power of God in order to be true. Please also see foresee, predestine and elect as the true meaning of all these words are perverted in order to support the same doctrinal error.

**Foresee / Foresaw**- See what will happen before it happens. This requires the power of God in order to be true. Please also see foresee, predestine and elect as the true meaning of all these words are perverted in order to support the same doctrinal error.

**Forewarn**- Warn of results before they happen. This does not necessarily require the power of God but it usually requires the knowledge of God's truths.

**Forget**- To lose the remembrance of; to let go from the memory. Bless the Lord, O my soul, and forget not all his benefits. Ps. 103. 2. To slight; to neglect.

**Forgive**- To pardon; to remit, as an offense or debt; to overlook an offense, and treat the offender as not guilty. There is doctrinal error taught about this word. We are to forgive trespasses and not required to forgive felonies. In addition, God does not forgive the person who refuses to truly repent nor does He require is to forgive such a person.

**Form**- Made; shaped; molded; planned; arranged; combined; enacted; constituted.

**Former**- having previously filled a particular role or been a particular thing.

**FORNICATION** – violation of any covenant relationship including salvation and marriage.

**Forsake**- Deserted; left; abandoned.

**Forthwith**- forth and with. Immediately there fell from his eyes as it had been scales; and he received his sight forthwith. Acts. 9.

**FOURTY** - This number is symbolically associated with the judgment of God.

**Forward**- Cheerful readiness; promptness. It expresses more than willingness. We admire the forwardness of Christians in propagating the gospel.

**Foul**- Covered with or containing extraneous matter which is injurious, noxious or offensive; filthy; dirty; not clean; as a foul cloth; foul hands; a foul chimney.

**Foundation**- The basis of an edifice; that part of a building which lies on the ground; usually a wall of stone which supports the edifice. Also, the basis or ground work, or any thing; that on which any thing stands, and by which it is supported. The basis of true Christian life is the relationship with Christ.

**Fountain**- A natural source of living water.

**Fowl**- This term is used for every description of bird described as of the heaven and of the air, including those that feed on carrion, as in Ge 15:11; Re 19:17,21; and those for the table. 1Ki 4:23; Ne 5:18. In addition, the unclean fowl are used, symbolically, for devils.

**Fox**- A mammal like a dog with a name derived from its digging or burrowing under ground. The proverbial cunning of the fox is alluded to in Eze 13:4, and in Lu 13:32, where our Lord calls Herod "that fox".

**Fragment**- A part broken off; a piece separated from any thing by breaking.

**Frame**- To fit or prepare and unite several parts in a regular structure or entire thing; to fabricate by orderly construction and union of various parts; as, to frame a house or other building. Also, the timbers of an edifice fitted and joined in the form proposed, for the purpose of supporting the covering; as the frame of a house, barn, bridge or ship.

**Frankincense**- an odorous resin imported from Arabia (Isa 60:6; Jer 6:20), yet also growing in Palestine (Song 4:14). It was one of the ingredients in the perfume of the sanctuary (Ex 30:34), and was used as an accompaniment of the meat- offering (Le 2:1,16; 6:15; 24:7). When burnt it emitted a fragrant odour, and hence the incense became a symbol of the Divine name (Mal 1:11; Song 1:3) and an emblem of prayer (Ps 141:2; Lu 1:10; Re 5:8; 8:3). This gift is a symbolic recognition the healing power brought by Jesus.

**Fraud**- To cheat according to the legal definition. There is a form of cheating which is not fraud if it does not fulfill the legal definition. To deprive of right, either by obtaining something by deception or artifice, or by taking something wrongfully without the knowledge or consent of the owner; to cheat; to cozen; followed by of before the thing taken; as, to defraud; a man of his right.

**Free**- Being at liberty; not being under necessity or restraint, physical or moral; a word of general application to the body, the will or mind, and to corporations.

**Friend**- One who is attached to another by affection. Abraham is signally honored in being called "the friend of God," Isa 41:8; Jas 2:23. Christ granted a similar honor and blessing to his disciples, Joh 15:15. It is a different word, however, in Greek, by which he addressed Judas, Mt 26:50; the word there translated friend, means simply companion, and appears to have been used as a conversational term not implying friendship. The same word occurs in Mt 20:13; 22:12.

**Frogs**- A type of animal. Every Biblical reference, outside of Revelation, is a reference to one of the curses which God put on Egypt. Thus, our reference here is the devil imitating God.

**FRUIT** – is new life.

**Fruit of Righteousness**- New spiritual life in us from letting our Lord Jesus Christ work in and through our physical life and then giving us His righteousness.

**Frustrate**- To break or interrupt; hence, to defeat; to disappoint; to balk; to bring to nothing; as, to frustrate a plan, design or attempt; to frustrate the will or purpose. To disappoint; applied to persons.

**Full**- Abounding with; having a large quantity or abundance. Supplied; not vacant.

**Fulfill**- A tautological compound of full and fill. 1. To accomplish; to perform; to complete; to answer in execution or event what has been foretold or promised; as, to fulfill a prophecy or prediction; to fulfill a promise.

**Fullness**- having within its limits all that it can contain.

**Furlong**- A Greek measure of distance equal to 606 feet and 9 inches (Lu 24:13; Joh 6:19; 11:18; Re 14:20; 21:16. Please see the note for John 6:7, at [ljc1611kjv.com](http://ljc1611kjv.com), for various Biblical measurements.

**Furnace**- A place where a vehement fire and heat may be made and maintained, for melting ores or metals, etc. Various kinds of furnaces are noticed in the Bible, such as a smelting or calcining furnace: Ge 19:28; Ex 9:8,10; 19:18. especially a lime- kiln: Isa 33:12; Am 2:1. a refining furnace: Pr 17:3. Nebuchadnezzar's furnace, a large furnace built like a brick- kiln: Da 3:22- 23. with two openings one at the top for putting in the materials, and another below for removing them; the potter's furnace, Ecclus. 27:5; The blacksmith's furnace. Ecclus. 38:28. The Persians were in the habit of using the furnace as a means of inflicting punishment: Da 3:22- 23; Jer 29:22.

**Furnished**- Supplied; garnished; fitted with necessities.

**Further**- A helping forward; promotion; advancement. I know that I shall abide and continue with you all, for your furtherance and joy of faith. Phil. 1.

## G

**Gadarenes, Girgesenes, Gerasenes**- (These three names are used indiscriminately to designate the place where Jesus healed two men possessed by devils.

**Gain**- o obtain by industry or the employment of capital; to get as profit or advantage; to acquire.

**Gainsaying**- ne who contradicts or denies what is alleged; an opposer. Tit.1.

**Gaius**- Was a non- preacher companions of Paul in travel and called a fellowlabourer. When he could no longer travel, he still helped preachers and missionaries. 3John was written to him.

**Galilee** - The most northerly of the three provinces of Palestine, namely, Galilee, Samaria, Judaea (Joh 4:3- 4; Lu

17:11; Ac 9:31). Galilee's Gentile character caused the southern Jews of purer blood to despise it (Joh 1:46; 7:52); but its very darkness was the Lord's reason for vouchsafing to it more of the light of His presence and ministry than to self- satisfied and privileged Judaea. There He first publicly preached, in Nazareth synagogue. From it came His apostles (Ac 1:11; 2:7); foretold in De 33:18- 19,23. Compare on Pentecost Ac 2:7; Ps 68:27- 28. Jerusalem, the theocratic capital, might readily have known Messiah; to compensate less favored Galilee He ministered mostly there. Galilee's debasement made its people feel their need of the Savior, a feeling unknown to the self right. cons Jews (Mt 9:13).

**Gall**- This word is also used of the poison of asps (Job 20:14), and of the vitals, the seat of life (25). Heb rosh. In De 32:33; Job 20:16 it denotes the poison of serpents. In Ho 10:4 the Hebrew word is rendered "hemlock." The original probably denotes some bitter, poisonous plant, most probably the poppy, which grows up quickly, and is therefore coupled with wormwood (De 29:18; Jer 9:15; La 3:19). Comp. Jer 8:14; 23:15, "water of gall," Gesenius, "poppy juice;" others, "water of hemlock," "bitter water."

**Garden**- A piece of ground appropriated to the cultivation of herbs, or plants, fruits and flowers; usually near a mansion- house. Land appropriated to the raising of culinary herbs and roots for domestic use, is called a kitchen- garden; that appropriated to flowers and shrubs is called a flower garden; and that to fruits, is called a fruit garden. But these uses are sometimes blended.

**Garment**- Several words are used both in the O.T. and in the N.T. for raiment, clothing, or apparel, without defining what particular garments are alluded to; and when a single garment is intended it is variously translated in the A.V. In the East few garments were needed, and they were probably much the same as those worn there at present by the natives.

**Garnish**- Adorned; decorated; embellished. Furnished.

**Garner**- Same as 'granary,' a storehouse for threshed grain and for the fruits of the earth. It is mentioned in the N.T. as a receptacle for wheat. Ps 144:13; Joe 1:17; Mt 3:12; Lu 3:17.

**Gate**- A large door which gives entrance into a walled city, a castle, a temple, palace or other large edifice. It differs from door chiefly in being larger. Gate signifies both the opening or passage, and the frame of boards, planks or timber which closes the passage. Beside the ordinary use of gates for the protection of a city, 'in the gate' was the place where many important things were transacted. When Boaz wanted the question settled respecting Ruth



and the inheritance, he went up to the gate: the subject was debated with a nearer relative, then concluded, and witnessed by the elders. Ru 4:1- 12; cf. Jos 20:4; 1Sa 4:18; 2Sa 15:2; Ac 14:13. To 'sit in the gate' was a place of honour.

**Gates of Hell-** Spiritually represents all of the power and authority of devils in Hell.

**Gather-** Collected; assembled; contracted; plaited; drawn by inference.

**Gaza-** called also Azzah, which is its Hebrew name (De 2:23; 1Ki 4:24; Jer 25:20), strong, a city on the Mediterranean shore, remarkable for its early importance as the chief center of a great commercial traffic with Egypt. It is one of the oldest cities of the world (Ge 10:19; Jos 15:47).

**Gaze / Gazing-** To fix the eyes and look steadily and earnestly; to look with eagerness or curiosity; as in admiration, astonishment, or in study.

**Gender-** A sex, male or female. To copulate; to breed. In Galatians 4:24, this word is used to say that the spiritual children of Agar (Islam) go into spiritual bondage.

**Generation-** The book of the generations," means a family register, or history of Adam. Ge 37:2. Since the lifespan of man changed throughout history, the length of years also changed from 100 years to 20 years.

**Gennesaret-** Mt 14:34; Mr 6:53, was a tract of land some three or four miles long on the western border of the Sea of Galilee. It was a lovely and exceedingly fertile region; in it probably lay Capernaum and Bethsaida of Galilee, places often visited by our Lord.

**Gentile-** A non- Jew.

**Gentleness-** Softness in manners.

**Ghost (lower- case)-** a physical manifestation of a spirit.

**Gift-** given from one person to another without compensation; a donation.

**Gift of God-** A title for our Lord Jesus Christ.

**Gird-** The Orientals commonly dress in loose robes, flowing down around the feet; so that when they wish to run, or fight, or apply themselves to any business, they are obliged to bind their garments close around them with a sash or girdle.

**Girdle-** A "band," a girdle worn by men (Ps 109:19; Isa 22:21), worn by prophets (2Ki 1:8; Jer 13:1), soldiers (Isa 5:27; 2Sa 20:8; Eze 23:15), Kings (Job 12:18).

**Give-** Bestowing; conferring; imparting; granting; delivering.

**Given-** Past- tense form of the word give.

**Giver-** The person who gives.

**Giving of Thanks-** To express gratitude for a favor; to make acknowledgments to one for kindness bestowed. We are bound to thank God always for you. 2 Thess 1.

**Glad-** pleased; affected with pleasure or moderate joy; moderately happy. A wise son maketh a glad father. Prov.10.

**Glass-** All of the dictionaries speak about the material. However, the usage within the Bible is: "mirror".

**Glister-** To shine; to be bright; to sparkle; to be brilliant. All that glistens is not gold.

**Glory-** Brightness, splendor, luster.

**Glory, Jesus Christ return in-** When Jesus was transfigured, He showed the glory He will have when He returns to rule this world.

**Glutton-** One who indulges to excess in eating. 1. One eager of anything to excess.

**Gnashing-** To strike the teeth together, as in anger or pain; as, to gnash the teeth in rage. To grind the teeth. He shall gnash with his teeth and melt away. Ps.112. 1. To rage even to collision with the teeth; to growl. They gnashed on me with their teeth. Ps.35.

**Go Away-** leave and not return.

**Go Before-** Lead the way as in a guide and also as a herald of an important person.

**Go Ye-** Each and every one of you personally go.

**Goat-** A domesticated animal. The Bible speaks about the wild goat, the goat deer, and the he goat, which is the leader of the flock; hence the chief ones of the earth, leaders in mighty wickedness; the ram represents headstrong wantonness and offensive lust (Isa 14:9; Zec 10:3; compare Mt 25:32- 33; Eze 34:17). The 'Sheep and Goat Judgment' is when our Lord Jesus Christ will separate people living on the Earth, who were not part of the armies belonging to devils, and will do it at the start of His

judgment. Those whom he calls 'goats' are immediately sent to Hell.

**God**- The most powerful Being anywhere. Please see each Book Study at [ljc1611kjv.com](http://ljc1611kjv.com) for a table showing all of the attribute of God which are in that Bible book.

**God in us**- The saved have the indwelling Holy Spirit in them during the 'Church Age'.

**God created us**- Please see the note for Revelation 4:11, on [ljc1611kjv.com](http://ljc1611kjv.com), for links to every Bible reference where we are told this truth.

**God Does not Change**- (Malachi 3:6; Hebrews 13:8) All of creation is controlled by laws which never change such as the laws of Math. God established those laws and creation is based upon the character of our never-changing God.

**God Forbid**- These are things which God will never allow under any circumstance.

**God is able**- God can do anything which is not against His character such as sin.

**God will not cast away his people**- Once someone becomes a child of God, they never lose that relationship no matter what they do. God may have the kill them, but God will not let go of the relationship.

**Godly**- These people have a personal relationship with God and a testimony that shows that relationship. They are clearly saved.

**gods (lower- case)**- Devils.

**Gold**- A precious metal. Used symbolically for anything which is highly valued and precious.

**Golgotha**- The same place as Calvary.

**Gomorrha**- Always associated with Sodom. The wickedness of its inhabitants brought down upon it fire from heaven, by which it was destroyed (Ge 18:16- 33; 19:1- 29; De 23:17).

**Good**- Valid; legally firm; not weak or defective; having strength adequate to its support; as a good title; a good deed; a good claim. In the Bible, only what comes from God is called good.

**Good Friday**- A religious lie from the Roman Catholic Church. Jesus was crucified on Thursday.

**Goodman**- Master of the house. Pr 7:19; Mt 20:11; 24:43; Mr 14:14; Lu 12:39; 22:11.

**Goodness**- In the Bible, "goodness" is 'a fruit of the Spirit' which is given to saved people, and denied to the lost, to cause the saved to show God's love to a lost and dying world so that they will want to get saved.

**Goods (plural)**- Movables; household furniture. 1. Personal or movable estate; as horses, cattle, utensils, etc. 2. Wares; merchandize; commodities bought and sold by merchants and traders.

**Gorgeous**- With showy magnificence; splendidly; finely. The prince was gorgeously arrayed.

**GOSPEL**- The good news from God about His salvation. There are thirteen (13) applications described in the Doctrinal Studt called Gospel, on [ljc1611kjv.com](http://ljc1611kjv.com), and their relationship to each other is shown on the Gospel Flowchart on [ljc1611kjv.com](http://ljc1611kjv.com).

**Governor**- A ruler in his capacity of lawgiver and dispenser of justice. A ruler consider especially as having power over the property and persons of his subjects. Ge 24:2; Jos 12:2; Ps 100:5.

**GRACE**- Unmerited favor, getting what you don't deserved.

**Grace through Christ**- This grace comes from God and is only given to saved people who are in a right relationship with Christ. It is denied to saved people who are not in a right relationship with Christ.

**Graff / Graft**- To insert a cion or shoot, or a small cutting of it, into another tree. 1. To propagate by insertion or inoculation. The union thus of branches to a stem is used to illustrate the union of true believers to the true Church.

**Grain**- The past of a plant used in propagation. Used, in Am 9:9, of a small stone or kernel; in Mt 13:31, of an individual seed of mustard; in Joh 12:24; 1Co 15:37, of wheat.

**Grant**- To admit as true what is not proved; to allow; to yield; to concede. We take that for granted which is supposed to be true.

**Grape**- The fruit of the vine. Used symbolically, by God, to represent His people. The grapes of Palestine were very fine, of great size and high flavor, Nu 13:24. The fruit of the wild vine is called oenantes, of the flower of wine. They never ripen, and are good only for verjuice.

**Grass**- As the herbage rapidly fades under the scorching sun, it is used as an image of the brevity of human life (Isa 40:6- 7; Ps 90:5).

**Grave**- The place where dead bodies were placed. Among the ancient Hebrews graves were outside of cities in the open field (Lu 7:12; Joh 11:30). Kings (1Ki 2:10) and prophets (1Sa 25:1) were generally buried within cities. Graves were generally grottoes or caves, natural or hewn out in rocks (Isa 22:16; Mt 27:60). There were family cemeteries (Ge 47:29; 50:5; 2Sa 19:37). Public burial-places were assigned to the poor (Jer 26:23; 2Ki 23:6).

**Graven**- Carved or engraved idol or image. Ex 20:4.

**Great Commission**- Please see the message with this name on [ljc1611kjv.com](http://ljc1611kjv.com) [1kjv.com](http://1kjv.com).

**Greed**- Keenness of appetite for food or drink; ravenousness; voracity. Ardent desire.

**Grecian**- Hellenists, Greek- Jews; Jews born in a foreign country, and thus did not speak Hebrew (Ac 6:1; 9:29), nor join in the Hebrew services of the Jews in Palestine, but had synagogues of their own in Jerusalem. Joe 3:6

**Greek**- Found only in the New Testament, where a distinction is observed between "Greek" and "Grecian" (q.v.). The former is (1) a Greek by race (Ac 16:1- 3; 18:17; Ro 1:14), or (2) a Gentile as opposed to a Jew (Ro 2:9- 10). The latter, meaning properly "one who speaks Greek," is a foreign Jew opposed to a home Jew who dwelt in Palestine

**Green**- Properly, growing, flourishing, as plants; hence, of the color of herbage and plants when growing, a color composed of blue and yellow rays, one of blue and yellow rays, one of the original prismatic colors; verdant.

**Greet**- To inquire of anyone respecting welfare.

**Grief**- The pain of mind produced by loss, misfortune, injury or evils of any kind; sorrow; regret. We experience grief when we lose a friend, when we incur loss, when we consider ourselves injured, and by sympathy, we feel grief at the misfortunes of others.

**Grieve**- To give pain of mind to; to afflict; to wound the feelings. Nothing grieves a parent like the conduct of a profligate child.

**Grievous**- from grieve, or grief. Heavy; oppressive; burdensome; as a grievous load of taxes. 1. Afflictive; painful; hard to be borne. Correction is grievous to him that forsaketh the way. Prov.15.

**Grind**- (Ex 32:20; De 9:21; Jg 16:21), to crush small gross; to oppress the poor (Isa 3:5).

**Gross**- Verb meaning "to make fat," is applied twice to "making gross" the heart (Mt 13:15; Ac 28:27).

**Groan**- To breathe with a deep murmuring sound; to utter a mournful voice, as in pain or sorrow.

**Ground**- The surface of land or upper part of the earth, without reference to the materials which compose it. We apply ground to soil, sand or gravel indifferently, but never apply it to the whole mass of the earth or globe, nor to any portion of it when removed. Also, used to fix or set, as on a foundation, cause, reason or principle; as arguments grounded on reason; faith grounded on scriptural evidence.

**Grow**- To enlarge in bulk or stature, by a natural, imperceptible addition of matter, through ducts and secreting organs, as animal and vegetable bodies; to vegetate as plants, or to be augmented by natural process, as animals. Thus, a plant grows from a seed to a shrub or tree, and a human being grows from a fetus to a man.

**Grudge**- Unwillingly; with reluctance or discontent; as, to give grudgingly.

**Guard**- A place where watch was kept. Ne 4:22- 23; Eze 38:7.

**Guest**- A householder is expected to entertain a traveler, and in turn the traveler may accept with perfect ease the hospitality shown without any obligation to pay.

**Guestchamber**- It is recorded that in Jerusalem at the time of the feasts, when so many persons came from distant places, those living in the city who were able, gave up a room for the use of any that came to worship, hence the term 'guest- chamber.'

**Guilt**- Criminal; having knowingly committed a crime or offense, or having violated a law by an overt act or by neglect, and by that act or neglect, being liable to punishment; not innocent.

**Guiltless**- "Freedom from blame," at other times to be "free from punishment," these two ideas running over into each other as with the word "guilt." Please note that guiltless is not the same as innocent.

**Guide**- To lead or direct in a way; to conduct in a course or path; as, to guide an enemy or a traveler, who is not acquainted with the road or course. The meek will he guide in judgment. Ps.25.

**Guile**- Craft; cunning; artifice; duplicity; deceit; usually in a bad sense.

**Gush**- To issue with violence and rapidity, as a fluid; to rush forth as a fluid from confinement; as, blood gushes from a vein in venesection.



**Habitation**- Act of inhabiting; a state of dwelling; a place of abode; a settled dwelling; a mansion; a house or other place in which man or any animal dwells. Spiritually, God is the habitation of his people, who find rest and safety in him (Ps 71:3; 91:9). Justice and judgment are the habitation of God's throne (Ps 89:14), because all his acts are founded on justice and judgment. (See Ps 132:5,13; Eph 2:22, of Canaan, Jerusalem, and the temple as God's habitation.) God inhabits eternity (Isa 57:15), i.e., dwells not only among men, but in eternity, where time is unknown; and "the praises of Israel" (Ps 22:3), i.e., he dwells among those praises and is continually surrounded by them.

**Hail**- Particles of ice falling from the clouds. Though hail is usually formed by natural causes not yet perhaps well understood, it is often referred to in scripture as one of the judgments of God. It formed one of the plagues in Egypt. Ex 9:18- 34; Ps 78:47- 48; 105:32; and is at times connected with fire or lightning. God smote the Amalekites by 'great stones' from heaven. Jos 10:11. The hail is called upon to praise Jehovah, because it fulfills His word. Ps 148:8; Isa 28:2,17; Hag 2:17. It will also form a notable part of the judgments of God in His future dealings with this guilty world. Re 8:7; 11:19; 16:21.

**Hale**- Sound; entire; healthy; robust; not impaired; as a hale body.

**Halt**- lame on the feet (Ge 32:31; Ps 38:17).

**Hair**- A small filament issuing from the skin of an animal, and from a bulbous root. Each filament contains a tube or hollow within, occupied by a pulp or pith, which is intended for its nutrition, and extends only to that part which is in a state of growth. When hair means a single filament, it has a plural, hairs.

**Hall**- The "court" or "uncovered space", on a lower level than the lowest floor, in the midst of a house, as the high priest's (Lu 22:55).

**Hand**- n man, the extremity of the arm, consisting of the palm and fingers, connected with the arm at the wrist; the

part with which we hold and use any instrument. Spiritually, It is used as the symbol of human action (Ps 9:16; Job 9:30; Isa 1:15; 1Ti 2:8). Washing the hands was a symbol of innocence (Ps 26:6; 73:13; Mt 27:24), also of sanctification (1Co 6:11; Isa 51:16; Ps 24:3- 4). In Ps 77:2.

**Hand of God**- the power, authority and control of God to do things.

**Handkerchief**- Properly "a sweat- cloth." It is rendered "napkin" in Joh 11:44; 20:7; Lu 19.

**Handled**- Touched; treated; managed.

**Handmaid**- This word often refer in scripture to a female slave, as applied to Hagar the Egyptian, Ge 25:12; but were also used by women themselves as a term of humility, as when Hannah spake to Jehovah and to Eli, 1Sa 1:11,16,18; as Abigail to David, 1Sa 25:24- 41; and by Mary and Elizabeth as handmaids of the Lord. Lu 1:38,48.

**Hanged**- Criminals were usually put to death before hanging, for ignominy (Jos 10:26). The bodies were removed before nightfall in order not to defile the land (De 21:22- 23). Hence our Lord's body as those of the two thieves was taken from the cross before the high day of the approaching sabbath (Joh 19:31).

**Happy**- People regularly claim that 'happiness comes from happenings'. That is: we get good feelings from circumstances of life.

**Hard**- Firm; solid; compact; not easily penetrated, or separated into parts; not yielding to pressure; applied to material bodies, and opposed to soft; as hard wood; hard flesh; a hard apple.

**Harden**- To make hard or more hard; to make firm or compact; to indurate; as, to harden iron or steel; to harden clay. Spiritually, it is used to confirm in effrontery; to make impudent; as, to harden the face. Also, to make obstinate, unyielding or refractory; as, to harden the neck. Jer.19.

**Harlot**- A woman who prostitutes her body for hire; a prostitute; a common woman. Spiritually, it is used for one who forsakes the true God and worships idols. Is.1. It is also used for unfaithfulness: "how is the faithful city become an harlot!" Isa 1:21; Eze 16:31,35. The mystic Babylon is designated "The mother of harlots," Re 17:5: not only unfaithful herself, but the mother of such.

**Harm**- Injury; hurt; damage; detriment. Do thyself no harm. Acts.16. He shall make amends for the harm he hath done in the holy thing. Lev.5.

**Harmless**- Not hurtful or injurious; innoxious. Ceremonies are harmless in themselves. Unhurt; undamaged; uninjured; as, to give bond to save another harmless. Innocent; not guilty.

**Harp**- the national instrument of the Hebrews. It was invented by Jubal (Ge 4:21).

**Harvest**- The season for gathering grain or fruit.

**Haste / Hastily**- speed; swiftness; dispatch; expedition; applied only to voluntary beings, as men and other animals; never to other bodies. We never say, a ball flies with haste.

**Hate**- This is an action verb which encompasses the opposite attitudes and actions from love. The true Biblical definition of the word hate includes a significant preference for another above the object of the hate.

**HATH** – lifelong having.

**Hatred**- Abhorrence or detestation.

**Have ye not Read**- This is matched with the phrase: "It is written" and both were used by Jesus when dealing with religious people who claimed to be religious authorities while also claiming religious beliefs which when against what "the word of God" literally said. Please see the note for Luke 6:3, at [ljc1611kjv.com1kjv.com](http://ljc1611kjv.com1kjv.com), for the Bible references to where these phrases are reported.

**Havock**- Waste; devastation; wide and general destruction.

**Hay**- A form of grass. Used to represent physical substance that does not last long.

**Hazard**- Put at risk or in danger; ventured.

**Head**- The uppermost part of the human body, or the foremost part of the body of prone and creeping animals. Used spiritually for the most important part of anything.

**Heal**- To cure of a disease or wound and restore to soundness, or to that state of body in which the natural functions are regularly performed; as, to heal the sick. Speak, and my servant shall be healed. Matt.8.

**Health**- That state of an animal or living body, in which the parts are sound, well organized and disposed, and in which they all perform freely their natural functions. In This state the animal feels no pain.

**Heap**- Piled; amassed; accumulated.

**Hear**- Perceiving by the ear. This word is often used symbolically for hearing the spiritual message of the word of God, as sound.

**Heart**- While this word is used for a physical part of the body, in the Bible, it is always used for the spiritual meaning. Our heart controls the same things as our soul only where the soul deals with the long term the heart deals with the short term and we control our heart directly while the soul is the accumulated actions of our heart. Both are the way we think (mind), the way we emotionally respond to circumstances (emotions) and the method we use to make decisions (will).

**Hearken**- To listen; to lend the ear; to attend to what is uttered, with eagerness or curiosity.

**Heat**- To grow warm or hot; to communicate heat to, or cause to be hot; as, to heat an oven or a furnace; to heat iron.

**Heathen**- pagan; a Gentile; one who worships idols, or is unacquainted with the true God. In the Scriptures, the word seems to comprehend all nations except the Jews or Israelites, as they were all strangers to the true religion, and all addicted to idolatry.

**Heaven**- According to the Jewish notion there were three heavens, (a) The firmament, as "fowls of the heaven" (Ge 2:19; 7:3,23; Ps 8:8, etc.), "the eagles of heaven" (La 4:19), etc. (b) The starry heavens (De 17:3; Jer 8:2; Mt 24:29). (c) "The heaven of heavens," or "the third heaven" is the home of God (De 10:14; 1Ki 8:27; Ps 115:16; 148:4; 2Co 12:2). The phrase "heaven and earth" is used to indicate the whole universe (Ge 1:1; Jer 23:24; Ac 17:24).

**Heaviness**- Weight; ponderousness; gravity; the quality of being heavy; as the heaviness of a body. It is used spiritually for: sadness; sorrow; dejection of mind; depression of spirits.

**Heavy**- "To be weighty" (1Sa 4:18; 2Sa 14:26; La 3:7); It is used (1) for what is hard to bear, oppressive, (Ex 18:18; Nu 11:14; 1Sa 5:6,11; Ps 38:4; Isa 24:20).

**Hebrew**- A name applied to the Israelites in Scripture only by one who is a foreigner (Ge 39:14,17; 41:12, etc.), or by the Israelites when they speak of themselves to foreigners (Ge 40:15; Ex 1:19), or when spoken of an contrasted with other peoples (Ge 43:32; Ex 1:3,7,15; De 15:12). This word is used for physical descendants of Abraham.

**Hedge**- It was customary to surround vineyards with a wall of loose stones or mud, often crowned with thorns to

keep off wild beasts; so, Israel fenced by God (Ps 80:12; Mt 21:33).

**Heed**- Pay attention; watch out. Ge 31:24.

**Heir**- The man who succeeds, or is to succeed another in the possession of lands, tenements and hereditaments, by descent; the man on whom the law casts an estate of inheritance by the death of the ancestor or former possessor; or the man in whom the title to an estate of inheritance is vested by the operation of law, on the death of a former owner. Spiritually, the saved who receive rewards from God, in Heaven, are also called heirs.

**Hell**- Place of torment, in the center of the Earth, where God puts lost people until they are taken out for the "great white throne judgment" and then cast into the "lake of fire".

**Help**- To aid; to assist; to lend strength or means towards effecting a purpose; as, to help a man in his work; to help another in raising a building; to help one to pay his debts; to help the memory or the understanding. Please also see the word holpen.

**Hem**- The border of a garment. On the hem of the high priest's robe were pomegranates of blue, and purple, and scarlet, and twined linen, placed alternately with a golden bell — typifying that fruit and testimony flow from Christ's heavenly position, and are borne and rendered by Christians through abiding in Him. Ex 28:33- 34; 39:24,26.

**Hen**- Female domesticated fowl. In Mt 23:37; Lu 13:34 the domestic fowl is alluded to, and her well-known care for her chickens, in illustration of how the Lord would have gathered the Jews under His almighty and loving protection; but, alas, they would not!

**Hence**- From This place. Arise, let us go hence. John 14.

**Henceforth**- From This time forward.

**Herb**- A plant or vegetable with a soft or succulent stalk or stem, which dies to the root every year, and is thus distinguished from a tree and a shrub, which have ligneous or hard woody stems.

**Herd**- A group of domesticated animals which have hoofs.

**Hereafter**- From this time forward.

**Heresies**- A fundamental error in religion, or an error of opinion respecting some fundamental doctrine of religion.

**Heretic**- A person under any religion, but particularly the Christian, who holds and teaches opinions repugnant

to the established faith, or that which is made the standard of orthodoxy. In strictness, among Christians, a person who holds and avows religious opinions contrary to the doctrines of Scripture, the only rule of faith and practice.

**Heritage**- Inheritance; an estate that passes from an ancestor to an heir by descent or course of law; that which is inherited. In Scripture, the saints or people of God are called his heritage, as being claimed by him, and the objects of his special care. 1 Pet.5.

**Herod**- The Herods, though aliens by birth, were Jews in faith. They made religion an engine of state policy.

**Herodians**- Upholders of the Herodian dynasty, regarding it as the safeguard against direct pagan rule which the Jews loathed, and also as the best compromise between the ancient faith and pagan civilization.

**Hewn**- Cut and made smooth or even; chopped; hacked; shaped by cutting or by a chisel.

**Hide / Hidden**- The word hidden is a past-tense form of the word hide, To conceal; to withhold or withdraw from sight; to place in any state or position in which the view is intercepted from the object.

**High Priest**- A priest is: 'One who represents men before God'. The high priest was the top of their authority. In the New Testament, our Lord Jesus Christ is the high priest of all saved.

**Highest**- An identification of God. Also called the Most High.

**Highminded**- A. proud, arrogant attitude.

**Highway**- A road maintained by the government. Though during the sway of the Romans over Palestine they made a few substantial roads for their carts and chariots, yet for the most of the time, the Jews had nothing such as we call roads, but only footpaths through which animals walk in single file.

**Hill Country**- Any part of the range of hills that runs through Palestine from north to south, in distinction from the plains towards the Mediterranean or the Jordan; and in distinction from the Shephelah which is a region in Judah that runs between the hill country and the plain on the west, called the 'lowlands.' Jos 13:6; Lu 1:39,66.

**Hinder**- That is in a position contrary to that of the head or fore part; designating the part which follows; as the hinder part of a wagon; the hinder part of a ship, or the stern. Acts 27.

**Hired**- Procured or taken for use, at a stipulated or reasonable price; as a hired farm.

**Hither**- To this place; used with verbs signifying motion; as, to come hither; to proceed hither; to bring hither.

**Hold**- To stop; to confine; to restrain from escape; to keep fast; to retain. It rarely or never signifies the first act of seizing or falling on, but the act of retaining a thing when seized or confined. To grasp, is to seize, or to keep fast in the hand; hold coincides with grasp in the latter sense, but not in the former. We hold a horse by means of a bridle. An anchor holds a ship in her station.

**Holden**- Past- tense of hold. Held. 2Ki 23:22.

**Holding**- Continuing to hold. Stopping; confining; restraining; keeping; retaining; adhering; maintaining.

**Hold Fast**- Don't let go for any reason.

**Hole**- A hollow place or cavity in any solid body, of any shape or dimensions, natural or artificial. It may differ from a rent or fissure in being wider.

**Holpen**- KJV spelling for helped.

**Holy**- Properly, whole, entire or perfect, in a moral sense. Hence, pure in heart, temper or dispositions; free from sin and sinful affections. Applied to the Supreme Being, holy signifies perfectly pure, immaculate and complete in moral character; and man is more or less holy, as his heart is more or less sanctified, or purified from evil dispositions. We call a man holy, when his heart is conformed in some degree to the image of God, and his life is regulated by the divine precepts.

**Holy City**- There is more than one holy city, but, In the Bible, this phrase is used only for "Jerusalem or the New Jerusalem".

**Holy Ghost**- The third person of the Trinity when he is affecting this physical reality. When he is acting in the spiritual, "the word of God" uses "Holy Spirit". Please see [ljc1611kjb.com](http://ljc1611kjb.com) for more details on this distinction.

**Holy One**- Another name for our Saviour, which is God the Father, God the Holy Ghost, God the Son as Lord, God the Son as Jesus and God the Son as Christ. Each of them have a different role in our spiritual birth just like a man, a woman and God have different roles in a physical birth.

**Holy Spirit, indwelling**- This happens to everyone who is truly saved during the 'Church Age' and the truly saved do not lose the presence of God's Holy Spirit. It did

not happen before our Lord Jesus Christ sent Him on Pentecost.

**Home**- One's own habitation; as in the phrases, go home, come home, bring home, carry home.

**Honest**- Upright; just; fair in dealing with others; free from trickishness and fraud; acting and having the disposition to act at all times according to justice or correct moral principles; applied to persons.

**Honey**- A food from bees.

**Honeycomb**- A substance of a firm, close texture, formed by bees into hexagonal cells for repositories of honey, and for the eggs which produce their young.

**Honor / Honour**- A testimony of esteem; any expression of respect or of high estimation by words or actions; as the honors of war; military honors; funeral honors; civil honors. Also, to revere; to respect; to treat with deference and submission, and perform relative duties to. Honor thy father and thy mother. Ex.20:1.

**HOPE**-An action word based upon the person It is similar to faith in that it requires action but where true faith is based upon a promise in "the word of God", hope is based upon the character of God.

**Horn**- A natural means of defense which has many applications in "the word of God".

**Horse**- An animal used for war. In the Revelation also there are horses and riders thereon, representing the powers engaged in the providential course of God's dealings.

**Hosanna**- Means: 'save now,' as in Ps 118:25. In the N.T. the sense appears to be 'bestow blessing.' "Bestow blessing on the Son of David: bestow blessing O thou who art in the highest." Mt 21:9; Mr 11:9- 10; Joh 12:13.

**HOSPITALITY**- The act or practice of receiving and entertaining strangers or guests without reward, or with kind and generous liberality.

**Host**- An entertainer (Ro 16:23); a tavern- keeper, the keeper of a caravansary (Lu 10:35).

**Hot**- Having sensible heat; opposed to cold; as a hot stove or fire; a hot cloth; hot liquors. Hot expresses more than warm. Used symbolically, it means very ardent. A hot person is on- fire for God and His kingdom. This person is clearly saved and lives a life which displays this truth.

**Hour**- A short period of time relative to the perspective'. Thus, a thousand years can be considered to be an 'hour / short period of time' from the perspective of eternity.

**House**- In a general sense, a building or shed intended or used as a habitation or shelter for animals of any kind; but appropriately, a building or edifice for the habitation of man; a dwelling place, mansion or abode for any of the human species.

**House of David**- The word: "house" is used symbolically within the Bible, for the descendants of a person. Thus, the "house of David" are the descendants of king David, one of whom was promised to be God's Christ.

**House of God**- The word: "house" is used symbolically within the Bible, for the descendants of a person. Thus, the "house of God" is all saved people.

**House of Jacob**- The word: "house" is used symbolically within the Bible, for the descendants of a person. Thus, the "house of Jacob" is all Jews.

**Household**- Those who dwell in a house under one head, including the wife and children, and embracing servants who were usually slaves. Ge 15:2- 3; Lu 12:42; Ac 10:7; Php 4:22.

**Householder**- The master or chief of a family; one who keeps house with his family. Matt.13.

**Howbeit**- how, be, and it. Be it as it may; nevertheless; notwithstanding; yet; but; however.

**Humble**- Opposite of proud. Low; opposed to lofty or great; mean; not magnificent; as a humble cottage.

**Humility**- Act of submission. In theology, humility consists in lowliness of mind; a deep sense of one's own unworthiness in the sight of God, self- abasement, penitence for sin, and submission to the divine will.

**husband / husbandman / husbandry**- The business of a farmer, comprehending agriculture or tillage of the ground, the raising, managing and fattening of cattle and other domestic animals, the management of the dairy and whatever the land produces. Good husbandry is the care of domestic affairs, which is what God expects from a husband.

**Hundredfold**- Produce one hundred times what was received.

**Hunger**- An uneasy sensation occasioned by the want of food; a craving of food by the stomach; craving appetite.

**Hurt**- To bruise; to give pain by a contusion, pressure, or any violence to the body.

**Hymn**- Sung praises to God. The noun hymn is used only with reference to the services of the Greeks, and was distinguished from the psalm. The Greek tunes required Greek hymns.

**Hypocrisy**- Simulation; a feigning to be what one is not; or dissimulation, a concealment of one's real character or motives. More generally, hypocrisy is simulation, or the assuming of a false appearance of virtue or religion; a deceitful show of a good character, in morals or religion; a counterfeiting of religion.

**Hypocrite**- One who puts on a mask and feigns himself to be what he is not; a dissembler in religion.

**Hyssop**- A plant or genus of plants which the leaves have an aromatic smell, and a warm pungent taste. Hyssop was much used by the Jews in purification.

I

**I am (said by God)**- How God identified Himself to Moses. The only non- creates self- existing Being that exists.

**I say**- The person writing the Bible introduces their own point into the written discussion 212 times in the Bible.

**I Paul**- Paul is being very clear that this is him personally speaking and no other co- author can be held responsible for what Paul personally says. He backs his personal word with his personal testimony and we should do the same.

**Idle**- Not employed; unoccupied with business; inactive; doing nothing. In Mt 12:36, means empty and fruitless. The "idle word" which Christ condemns, is a word morally useless and evil.

**Idol**- An idol is anything which we give a greater value than our ongoing personal relationship with God.

**Idolater**- A worshiper of idols; one who pays divine honors to images, statues, or representations of any thing made by hands; one who worships as a deity that which is not God.

**Idolatry**- Excessive attachment or veneration for anything, or that which borders on adoration. This



includes the worship of idols, images, or anything made by hands, or which is not God.

**IF**– Specifies a condition which must be fulfilled in order for the specified result to be true.

**Ignorant**- Lacking knowledge. We are all ignorant of some things. Only God has all knowledge.

**III**- Bad or evil, in a general sense; contrary to good, physical or moral; applied to things; evil; wicked; wrong; iniquitous; as, his ways are ill; he sets an ill example.

**Immediate**- Proximate; acting without a medium, or without the intervention of another cause or means; producing its effect by its own direct agency. An immediate cause is that which is exerted directly in producing its effect, in opposition to a mediate cause, or one more remote.

**Immortality**- Exemption from oblivion. The quality of never ceasing to live or exist; exemption from death and annihilation; life destined to endure without end; as the immortality of the human soul. -- Jesus Christ, who hath abolished death, and hath brought life and immortality to light through the gospel. 2 Tim.1.

**Image**- A representation or similitude of any person or thing, formed of any substance. People today like to take pictures of themselves, which is an image and no matter how good that image is, it does not match the original being. Man was made in the image of God but can not match God.

**Imagine**- from imago, image. To form a notion or idea in the mind; to fancy.

**Imagination**- The power or faculty of the mind by which it conceives and forms ideas of things communicated to it by the organs of sense. Imagination is the representation of an individual thought.

**IN WHOM**– The being that you have a relationship with.

**INHERITANCE** –something you receive from or relative when they die.

**INIQUITY** – lifestyle sin, that you keep doing even thou you know it is sin

**Impart**- To give, grant or communicate; to bestow on another a share or portion of something; as, to impart a portion of provisions to the poor.

**Implacable**- his word properly denotes those who will not be reconciled where there is a quarrel; or who pursue the offender with unyielding revenge.

**Impotent**- Weak; feeble; wanting strength or power; unable by nature, or disabled by disease or accident to perform any act.

**Impossible**- That cannot be. It is impossible that two and two should make five, or that a circle and a square should be the same thing, or that a thing should be, and not be at the same time.

**Imprisonment**- To put into a prison; to confine in a prison or jail, or to arrest and detain in custody in any place.

**Impute**- To add to the legal record of a person.

**Imputeth Righteousness**- God permanently adds righteousness to the legal Heavenly record of a person.

**In Christ**- In right relationship with Christ. There is a doctrinal error taught which claims that all saved people are always in Christ and receive those blessings associated with this personal relationship. Please see this phrase at [ljc1611kiv.com](http://ljc1611kiv.com) for the doctrinal truth.

**In the Flesh**- When a person is acting according to the lusts of the flesh.

**Incense**- a mixture of gums or spices and the like, used for the purpose of producing a perfume when burned;" or the perfume itself of the spices, etc., burned in worship.

**Increase**- To become greater in bulk or quantity; to grow; to augment; as plants. Hence, to become more in number; to advance in value, or in any quality good or bad.

**Incontinent**- Want of restraint of the passions or appetites; free or uncontrolled indulgence of the passions or appetites, as of anger. Also, the involuntary discharge itself; as an incontinence of urine in diabetes.

**Indeed**- In reality; in truth; in fact.

**Indignation**- Anger or extreme anger, mingled with contempt, disgust or abhorrence.

**Inferior**- Lower in place, station, age, or rank in life.

**Infirmity**- An unsound or unhealthy state of the body; weakness; feebleness.

**Inform**- To instruct; to tell to; to acquaint; to communicate knowledge to; to make known to by word or writing; usually followed by of. Before we judge, we should

be well informed of the facts relating to the case. A messenger arrived and informed the commander of the state of the troops.

**Inherit-** To take by descent from an ancestor; to take by succession, as the representative of the former possessor; to receive, as a right or title descendible by law from an ancestor at his decease.

**Inheritance-** An estate derived from an ancestor to an heir by succession or in course of law; or an estate which the law casts on a child or other person, as the representative of the deceased ancestor.

**Iniquity-** Ongoing lifestyle sins.

**Ink-** Any liquid substance used for writing or forming letters.

**Inn-** We read of the inn as early as Ge 42:27; 43:21, when Jacob sent to Egypt for corn. As the word malon signifies simply 'lodging place,' at first nothing more may be implied than a place near water, where travelers usually rested. It would soon have been found that persons travelling long distances needed protection and some better resting place at night, which led to such places being provided at certain stations.

**Innocent-** Free from guilt; not having done wrong or violated any law; not tainted with sin; pure; upright. In This general sense, no human being that is a moral agent, can be innocent.

**Innumerable-** A large number which is beyond counting.

**Inquire-** To ask a question; to seek for truth or information by asking questions.

**Inquiry-** The act of inquiring; a seeking for information by asking questions; interrogation. The men who were sent from Cornelius, had made inquiry for Simon's house, and stood before the gate. Acts.10.

**Inspiration-** The extraordinary or supernatural divine influence vouchsafed to those who wrote the Holy Scriptures, rendering their writings infallible. "All scripture is given by inspiration of God" (R.V., "Every scripture inspired of God"), 2Ti 3:16.

**Instantly-** Immediately; without any intervening time; at the moment. Lightning often kills instantly.

**Instruct-** To teach; to inform the mind; to educate; to impart knowledge to one who was destitute of it. The first

duty of parents is to instruct their children in the principles of religion and morality.

**Instrument-** A tool; that by which work is performed or any thing is effected; as a knife, a hammer, a saw, a plow, etc. Swords, muskets and cannon are instruments of destruction. A telescope is an astronomical instrument.

**Insurrection-** A rising against civil or political authority; the open and active opposition of a number of persons to the execution of a law in a city or state. It is equivalent to sedition, except that sedition expresses a less extensive rising of citizens. It differs from rebellion, for the latter expresses a revolt, or an attempt to overthrow the government, to establish a different one or to place the country under another jurisdiction. It differs from mutiny, as it respects the civil or political government; whereas a mutiny is an open opposition to law in the army or navy. Insurrection is however used with such latitude as to comprehend either sedition or rebellion.

**Intend-** To mean; to design; to purpose, that is, to stretch or set forward in mind. For they intended evil against thee. Ps.21.

**Intent-** Literally, having the mind strained or bent on an object; hence, fixed closely; sedulously applied; eager in pursuit of an object; anxiously diligent; formerly with to, but now with on; as intent on business or pleasure; intent on the acquisition of science.

**Intercession-** The act of interceding; mediation; interposition between parties at variance, with a view to reconciliation; prayer or solicitation to one party in favor of another, sometimes against another.

**Interpret-** To explain the meaning or words to a person who does not understand them; to expound; to translate unintelligible words into intelligible ones; as, to interpret the Hebrew language to an Englishman.

**Beware:** there is a lot of doctrinal error taught about this procedure. I was paid as a professional interpreter three times when there were millions of dollars at stake and absolute guarantee of lawsuits for even one mistake. Every professional interpreter that I have ever spoke to agree with my rules for interpretation. But, self-proclaimed 'bible experts', who are not qualified claim that their opinions are a greater authority than many professional experts.

**Intreat-** To make an earnest petition or request.

**Invisible-** That cannot be seen; imperceptible by the sight.

**Inventors of Evil Things**- One who finds out something new; one who contrives and produces any thing not before existing; a contriver of new things which are intended to perform an evil purpose.

**inward** - Internal; interior; placed or being within; as the inward structure of the body. Seated in the mind or soul.

**Iron**- The hardest, most common and most useful of all the metals. Figuratively, strength; power; as a rod of iron. Dan.2.

**Is** – On going verb of existence. Singular form of the word are.

**Isaac**- The only son of Abraham by Sarah. As the child of promise, he is contrasted with Ishmael (Ro 9:7,10; Ga 4:28; Heb 11:18).

**Island**- A tract of land surrounded by water.

**Israel**- the name conferred on Jacob after the great prayer- struggle at Peniel (Ge 32:28), because "as a prince he had power with God and prevailed." (See Jacob.) This is the common name given to Jacob's descendants. The whole people of the twelve tribes are called "Israelites," the "children of Israel" (Jos 3:17; 7:25; Jg 8:27; Jer 3:21), and the "house of Israel" (Ex 16:31; 40:38). This name Israel is sometimes used emphatically for the true Israel, which are the Jews who truly served God (Ps 73:1; Isa 45:17; 49:3; Joh 1:47; Ro 9:6; 11:26).

**Issue**- What comes forth: children; Ge 48:6; discharge of liquid. Le 12:7

**it is written**- What is actually written in "the word of God".

**Ivory**- (Heb pl. shenhabim, the "tusks of elephants") was early used in decorations by the Egyptians, and a great trade in it was carried on by the Assyrians (Eze 27:6; Re 18:12).

J

**Jacob**- The son and heir of Isaac. Jacob is used in the Bible when he was acting in the flesh. Israel is used in the Bible when he was following God's Holy Spirit.

**Jailor**- the man in charge of the prison.

**James the son of Alphaeus**- also called "James the less" and is also the brother of Matthew.

**James the Lord's brother**- James the Lord's brother and brother of Joses, and Simon, and Judas. Believed to be the author of the book of James.

**James the son of Zebedee**- The brother of John and the first martyr among the apostles.

**Jasper**- a precious stone frequently noticed in Scripture. It was the last of the twelve inserted in the high priest's breastplate: (Ex 28:20; 39:13) and the first of the twelve used in the foundations of the new Jerusalem: Re 21:19. The characteristics of the stone as far as they are specified in Scripture: Re 21:11. are that it "was most precious," and "like crystal;" we may also infer from: Re 4:3. that it was a stone of brilliant and transparent light. The stone which we name "jasper" does not accord with this description. There can be no doubt that the diamond would more adequately answer to the description in the book of Revelation.

**Jealousy**- That passion of peculiar uneasiness which arises from the fear that a rival may rob us of the affection of one whom we love, or the suspicion that he has already done it; or it is the uneasiness which arises from the fear that another does or will enjoy some advantage which we desire for ourselves.

**Jeopardy**- Exposure to death, loss or injury; hazard; danger; peril.

**Jericho**- A fenced city in the midst of a vast grove of palm trees, in the plain of Jordan, over against the place where that river was crossed by the Israelites (Jos 3:16).

**Jerusalem**- The central place of worship of the true God. There is more than one holy city, but, usually, this phrase is used for Jerusalem or the New Jerusalem'. In the Bible, this phrase is used only for 'Jerusalem or the New Jerusalem.

**JESUS**- A literal physical man. This name is used for three different men in "the word of God" and only one is our Saviour. In addition, "the word of God" says that our Saviour includes; God the Father, God the Holy Ghost, The Son of God as Lord and the Son of God as Christ. Therefore, it is doctrinal error to claim that only "Jesus" is our Saviour. The Son of God, in His role as Saviour, doctrinally teaches us how to please God in our flesh. Please see the Doctrinal Study called: [What did Jesus Do?](#) At [ljc1611kjv.com](http://ljc1611kjv.com) for more details.

**Jesus Christ**- Doctrinally combines the roles of the Son of God as Jesus and as Christ. This combination provides blessings to all saved to help them mature spiritually.

**Jesus Christ is Lord**- All saved will be judged for how well they receive the blessings given through the role of Jesus Christ.

**Jesus is Christ and Messiah**- Jesus fulfilled all promises of God to pay the spiritual dowry in order to become Messiah / Christ after His resurrection.

**Jesus is our light**- As a literal physical man, Jesus shows us how to see spiritual truths in order to get blessings from God.

**Jewry / Judaea / Judea / Judah**- Different ways in which "the word of God" identifies the land God gave to the Jews.

**Joanna**- A faithful disciple of Jesus and did what she could to serve Him. She was one of the women at the sepulcher on the day of resurrection.

**John the Baptist**- The last Old Testament prophet and the herald of Jesus sent to prepare people to receive their Christ and King. Please see the Doctrinal Study, with this name, at [ljc1611kjv.com](http://ljc1611kjv.com) for references to every place that he is named.

**Join**- To set or bring one thing in contiguity with another. To couple; to connect; to combine; as, to join ideas.

**Joints**- The joining of two or more things. In anatomy, the joining of two or more bones; an articulation; as the elbow, the knee, or the knuckle.

**Jonah / Jonas**- The prophet who ran away from the job which God gave him. He ended up doing the job but lost the blessings for doing so.

**Jordan**- The river of Palestine is first referred to when Lot chose the plain of Jordan, because it was well watered, as the garden of the Lord. Ge 13:10.

**Journey**- A day's journey in the East is from 16 to 20 miles (Nu 11:31). (2.) A sabbath- day's journey is 2,000 paces or yards from the city walls (Ac 1:12). According to Jewish tradition, it was the distance one might travel without violating the law of Ex 16:29.

**Joy**- A spiritually based sense that we will be blessed by God for enduring current circumstances in a way that brings God glory. True Biblical joy includes:  
True joy is demonstrated (1Samuel 18:6, Job 38:7)  
is willingly given (1Chronicles 29:9)  
comes from God (1Chronicles 29:17)  
provides strength (Nehemiah 8:10)  
is talked about (Nehemiah 12:43)  
makes us generous (Esther 9:22)

has a limited time (Job 20:5)  
is a reaction to God's favor (Psalms 5:11, 16:11, 21:1, etc)  
is a reaction to righteousness (Psalms 67:4; 132:9, 16)  
is a result of change (Psalms 126:4)  
is a result of peace- giving (Proverbs 12:20)  
magnifies God (Psalms 35:27)  
is shared (Psalms 42:4)  
causes praise of God (Psalms 43:4)  
brings healing (Psalms 51:8)  
Comes from within, not without (Proverbs 14:10)

**Judas Iscariot**- One of the twelve (12) disciples. He betrayed Jesus then committed suicide. There is indication that he will be resurrected to become Satan's second "beast" in Revelation, the one that people wrongly call "the Antichrist". If it is not him then it is someone with his spirit just like John the Baptist fulfilled prophecies of the return of Elijah.

**Judas the brother of James**- An apostle also called Thaddaeus.

**Judge**- To judge is to compare facts or ideas, and perceive their agreement or disagreement, and thus to distinguish truth from falsehood. John 7:24 says: Judge not according to the appearance, but judge righteous judgment. There, Jesus literally told us to judge. Now, He did limit it to righteous judgment. The claim that 'we are to not judge' is a misquote In Matthew 7:1 and Luke 6:37 and take those verses out of context like Satan did.

**Judge of all the Earth**- Is our Lord Jesus Christ.

**Judged by Works**- God uses our spiritual works to judge the saved and the lost in order to determine rewards or punishment. He does not use world to determine salvation.

**Judgment Seat of Christ**- Where all saved will be judged for rewards or punishment. It literally says that some saved will receive "bad" and some will receive "the terror of the Lord" at that judgment seat.

**Judgment Without Mercy**- This is the type of judgment received by everyone who ends up at the "great white throne judgment".

**Jurisdiction**- The place where an authority has authority.

**JUST** – Conformed to rules of justice; doing equal justice. In a spiritual sense, righteous; religious; influenced by a regard to the laws of God; or living in exact conformity to the divine will.

**Justify**- To prove or show to be just, or conformable to law, right, justice, propriety or duty; to defend or maintain; to vindicate as right. We cannot justify disobedience or ingratitude to our Maker. We cannot justify insult or incivility to our fellow men. Intemperance, lewdness, profaneness and dueling are in no case to be justified. In theology, to pardon and clear from guilt; to absolve or acquit from guilt and merited punishment, and to accept as righteous on account of the merits of the Savior, or by the application of Christ's atonement to the offender.

K

**Keep**- To hold; to retain in one's power or possession; not to lose or part with; as, to keep a house or a farm; to keep any thing in the memory, mind or heart.

**Keep his Commandments**- According to 1John 5:3, people who do not keep the commandments of our Lord Jesus Christ do not have "the love of God".

**Keeper**- One who retains anything or anyone in custody.

**Key**- An instrument for shutting or opening a lock, by pushing the bolt one way or the other. Keys are of various forms, and fitted to the wards of the locks to which they belong. The word is also used symbolically for power or authority or office (Isa 22:22; Re 3:7; 1:8; comp. Re 9:1; 20:1; comp. also Mt 16:19; 18:18).

**Kid**- the young of the goat. It was much used for food (Ge 27:9; 38:17; Jg 6:19; 14:6).

**Kill**- To deprive of life, animal or vegetable, in any manner or by any means.

**Kindle**- Set on fire; inflamed; excited into action.

**Kindly**- With good will; with a disposition to make others happy or to oblige; benevolently; favorably. Let the poor be treated kindly. Be kindly affectioned one to another, with brotherly love - Rom.12.

**Kindness**- Good will; benevolence; that temper or disposition which delights in contributing to the happiness of others, which is exercised cheerfully in gratifying their wishes, supplying their wants or alleviating their distresses; benignity of nature. Kindness ever accompanies love.

**Kindred**- Related; congenial; of the like nature or properties; as kindred souls; kindred skies.

**Kinds of Laws that Apply to us Today**-

- the law of faith the law of the Spirit of life in Christ Jesus
- the law of Christ the law of her husband
- the law of righteousness the law of my mind
- the Law of Moses, and the church is required to keep only the 'moral' part of the Law of Moses
- the Law of the Lord
- the Law of God
- the Law of life
- the Law of liberty
- the law of the fathers and the law of the Jews are both man made and we do not keep them
- the law of evil we are to not obey
- the law of sin we are to not obey
- the law sin and death tells us that death is the result of sin

**King**- A king puts his character on his kingdom. Satan's kingdom is evil because Satan is evil. The kingdom of God is holiness and righteousness because God is holy and righteous. Lords report to the king.

**kings of the earth**- People who have kingdoms in this world.

**King of kings**- A title of our Lord Jesus Christ.

**King of the Jews**- A title of our Lord Jesus Christ.

**Kingdom of God**- Gods character in you.

**kingdom of Heaven**- Everything in God's home of heaven and the 1,000 years reign of Christ when He will enforce the laws of heaven on this Earth.

**Kinsman / Kinsmen**- Relatives.

**Kiss**- To treat with fondness; to caress.

**KJV** - King James Version

**Knee**- In anatomy, the articulation of the thigh and leg bones.

**Kneeling**- Falling on the knees.

**KNEW** - intimate relationship

**Knit**- To unite, as threads by needles; to connect in a kind of net- work; as, to knit a stocking. Also used symbolically to unite closely; as, let our hearts be knit together in love.

**Knock**- Knocking is used as a sign of importunity because it is not used in Oriental Societies to request admittance (Mt 7:7- 8; Lu 13:25), and of the coming of Christ (Lu 12:36; Re 3:20).

**Know / Knowledge**- A clear and certain perception of that which exists, or of truth and fact; and the perception of the connection and agreement, or disagreement between various truths and acts. Biblical usage includes knowledge which only comes only from personal intimate experience Such as when Adam made Eve pregnant.

**Know ye not**- Do you not have spiritual knowledge which only comes from God.

## L

**Labor / Labour**- This is work done, for reward. God promises everlasting rewards to His servants who do work in His kingdom in obedience to our Lord Jesus Christ. However, labor done for religious reasons, and not in obedience to our Lord Jesus Christ, is not rewarded by God.

**Laborer / Labourer**- One who does labor. See note for prior word.

**Lade**- To load; to put on or in, as a burden or freight. Jesus said "Woe!" to lawyers who "lade" God's people with religious rules which they themselves did not keep.

**Laden**- Jesus said: "Come unto me, all ye that labour and are heavy laden, and I will give you rest." He eliminates the need to keep religious rules when we serve Him personally.

**Lack**- To want; to be destitute of; not to have or possess. To be deficient. De 28:48.

**Lake**- A large and extensive collection of water contained in a cavity or hollow of the earth. It differs from a pond in size, the latter being a collection of small extent; but sometimes a collection of water is called a pond or a lake indifferently. Please also see the note for the phrase "lake of fire".

**lake of fire**- People preach about 'eternal Hell', but it is not eternal. Hell is in the center of the Earth and is destroyed when God creates a new heaven and new earth. But before that, everyone is removed from Hell and cast into the lake of fire. Everyone in it will be tormented for evermore because they have their eternal bodies which can burn but can not burn up. Everyone who is there is so because they rejected our "Lord Jesus Christ" as their personal "Lord".

**Laid Hands**- To physically grab. Sometimes this is with the intention of doing great harm which can end in death.

This phrase is also used for a religious ceremony showing support as someone is sent out to labor for our Lord.

**Lamb**- When lower- case, this word identifies the animal. When upper- case, it identifies the role of our "Lord Jesus Christ" when He was sacrificed by God the Father to save us.

**Land**- Any portion of the solid, superficial part of the globe, whether a kingdom or country, or a particular region.

**Language**- Human speech; the expression of ideas by words or significant articulate sounds, for the communication of thoughts.

**Lame**- Crippled or disabled in a limb, or otherwise injured so as to be unsound and impaired in strength.

**Lament**- To mourn; to grieve; to weep or wail; to express sorrow.

**Lamp**- A physical device used to produce light. In the tabernacle and the temple, there was a candle- stick. That part of the candle- sticks which bore the light was called a lamp (Ex 25:37; 1Ki 7:49; 2Ch 4:20; 13:11; Zec 4:2).

**Laodicea**- A city in Asia which had a church in the first century. It is mentioned in Colossians and in Revelation.

**Lasciviousness**- Looseness; irregular indulgence of animal desires; wantonness; lustfulness. 2. Tendency to excite lust, and promote irregular indulgences

**Last**- That comes after all the others; the latest; applied to time; as the last hour of the day; the last day of the year. Our "Lord Jesus Christ" is "Last" because he will end this creation.

**Laugh**- To make the noise and exhibit the features which are characteristic of mirth in the human species.

**Laughter**- Convulsive merriment; an expression of mirth peculiar to man, consisting in a peculiar noise and configuration of features, with a shaking of the sides and expulsion of breath.

**Launch**- To move, or cause to slide from the land into the water; as, to launch a ship.

**Law**- An established or permanent set of rules, prescribed by the supreme power of a state to its subjects, for regulating their actions, particularly their social actions. Laws are imperative or mandatory, commanding what shall be done; prohibitory, restraining from what is to be forborn; or permissive, declaring what may be done

without incurring a penalty. The laws which enjoin the duties of piety and morality, are prescribed by God and found in the Scriptures. Laws include other words such as statutes.

**Lawyer**- One versed in the laws, or a practitioner of law; one whose profession is to institute suits in courts of law, and to prosecute or defend the cause of clients. this is a general term, comprehending attorneys, counselors, solicitors, barristers, serjeants and advocates.

**Lay Hold**- Make something secure in your possession.

**Lay Up**- Store for future use. The saved are commanded to lay up treasure in Heaven before we leave this world.

**Lead (verb)**- To guide or conduct by showing the way; to direct; as, the Israelites were led by a pillar of a cloud by day, and by a pillar of fire by night.

**Leader**- One that leads or conducts; a guide; a conductor.

**Leaf / Leaves**- In botany, leaves are org and of perspiration and inhalation in plants. They usually shoot from the sides of the stems and branches, but sometimes from the root.

**Leap**- To spring or rise from the ground with both feet, as man, or with all the feet, as other animals; to jump; to vault; as, a man leaps over a fence, or leaps upon a horse.

**Learn**- To gain knowledge of; to acquire knowledge or ideas of something before unknown. We learn the use of letters, the meaning of words and the principles of science. We learn things by instruction, by study, and by experience and observation. It is much easier to learn what is right, than to unlearn what is wrong.

**Least**- Smallest; little beyond others, either in size or degree; as the least insect; the least mercy.

**Leave**- Permission; allowance; license; liberty granted by which restraint or illegality is removed.

**Leaven**- To excite fermentation in; to raise and make light, as dough or paste. A little leaven leaveneth the whole lump. 1Cor. 5. 2. Used spiritually for 'to taint'.

**Lebbaeus** - One of the twelve apostles. Also called Judas and brother to Matthew and James.

**Legion**- The largest division of the Roman army, of which it was, in order and armament, the miniature; 6,000 foot, with a body of horse. Mt 26:53, "thinkest thou that I cannot now pray to My Father, and He shall presently give

Me more than twelve legions of angels," against This band from the Roman "legion"; not merely My twelve apostles, but twelve "legions," and these "angels?" (compare 2Ki 6:17; Da 7:10).

**Letter**- Hence a letter is the first element of written language, as a simple sound is the first element of spoken language or speech. As sounds are audible and communicate ideas to others by the ear, so letters are visible representatives of sounds, and communicate the thoughts of others by me and of the eye. 2. A written or printed message; an epistle; a communication made by visible characters from one person to another at a distance. 3. Also used, symbolically, for written religious rules which people followed instead of obeying God's Holy Ghost.

**Lend**- Granting for temporary use.

**Leopard**- Famed for swiftness and agility (Hab 1:8); "you would fancy it was flying" (Oppian Cyneg., iii. 76); it climbs trees, and can crawl along the ground. Hence the symbol for Greece and Alexander's rapid victories (Da 7:6; Re 13:2). A leopard was the main type of body which a "beast" from Satan, in Revelation, had. The symbolic usage, of these beasts and other related beasts, show that Satan was behind all of the conquerors of Israel and is behind the attempt to conquer the world in Revelation.

**Leper / Leprosy**- A very contagious and deadly disease which caused numbness and was symbolic of the spiritual non- feeling of God's people towards the things of God.

**Let him Hear**- A command from God for those who can hear spiritual truths to actually listen and consider the message from God.

**Levite**- a descendant of the tribe of Levi (Ex 6:25; Le 25:32; Nu 35:2; Jos 21:3,41). This name is, however, generally used as the title of that portion of the tribe which was set apart for the subordinate offices of the sanctuary service (1Ki 8:4; Ezr 2:70), as assistants to the priests.

**Lewd**- Given to the unlawful indulgence of lust; addicted to fornication or adultery; dissolute; lustful; libidinous. Ezek. 23.

**Liar**- A person who knowingly utters falsehood; one who declares to another as a fact what he knows to be not true, and with an intention to deceive him. Please also see lie.

**Liberty**- Freedom from bondage and other things which restrict and bind. The conscience set free from guilt, as when the Lord said to several, "Thy sins be forgiven thee: go in peace." 3. Freedom from the law, etc. "Stand fast

therefore in the liberty wherewith Christ hath made us free." Ro 7:24- 25; Ga 5:1. Jesus said, "I am the door: by me if any man enter in he shall be saved, and shall go in and out, and find pasture." Joh 10:9.

**Liberal-** Generous; ample; large; of a free heart; free to give or bestow; not close or contracted; munificent; bountiful; generous; giving largely; as a liberal donor; the liberal founders of a college or hospital. It expresses less than profuse or extravagant.

**License / Licence-** In Ac 25:16, "opportunity to make his defense" or "have licence to answer for himself".

**Lick-** To lap; to take in by the tongue; as, a dog or cat licks milk. 1Kings 21.

**Lie-** an intentional violation of the truth. Lies are emphatically condemned in Scripture (Joh 8:44; 1Ti 1:9- 10; Re 21:27; 22:15). Mention is made of the lies told by good men, as by Abraham (Ge 12:12- 13; 20:2), Isaac (Ge 26:7), and Jacob ([Ge 27:24]); also by the Hebrew midwives (Ex 1:15- 19), by Michal (1Sa 19:14), and by David (1Sa 20:6). Please also see liar.

**Life-** The cause of all movement, both physically and spiritually. Physical life and spiritual life are separate from each other. Physical life is mentioned in Ge 2:7; Lu 16:25, and other places within "the word of God". Physical life ends (is mortal). Spiritual life is immortal (Heb 7:16) and eternal (Mt 19:16- 17; Joh 3:15). God and Christ are the absolute source and cause of all life (Joh 1:4; 5:26,39; 11:25; 12:50).

**Life Everlasting-** Spiritual life which has a beginning but no end. See the note on life, above.

**Lift-** To raise; to elevate both physically and mentally as, to lift the foot or the hand; or to raise a thought mentally.

**Light-** Light is one physical thing which is both, matter and energy. It allows us to see and understand physical things. It is also used spiritually for how God allows us to see and understand spiritual matters. Please also see the note for darkness and the note for 'light and darkness'.

**Light and Darkness-** These two are contrasted physically and spiritually with the smallest light conquering any darkness. Please see the notes for Romans 13:12 and [Light and Darkness in 1John](#), on [ljc1611kjv.com/1kjv.com](http://ljc1611kjv.com/1kjv.com). for references and explanations of every place where "the word of God" contrasts these two subjects.

**Light of the World-** The source of spiritual understanding of this world as presented in "the word of God". Our "Jesus" is "the light of the world" and saved

people are supposed to let His light shine in this world through their life.

**Lightning-** Electricity generated in the skies by nature. Frequently referred to by the sacred writers (Na 1:3- 6). Thunder and lightning are spoken of as tokens of God's wrath (2Sa 22:15; Job 28:26; 37:4; Ps 135:7; 144:6; Zec 9:14). They represent God's glorious and awful majesty (Re 4:5), or some judgment of God on the world (Re 20:9).

**LIKE** –similar, not exactly the same

**Likeminded-** Having the same way of thinking and talking.

**Likeness-** Resemblance in form; similitude. The picture is a good likeness of the original. Also see liken.

**Liken-** To compare; to represent as resembling or similar. Whosoever heareth these sayings of mine, and doeth them, I will liken him unto a wise man, that built his house on a rock. Matt. 6. Also see likeness.

**Likewise-** like and wise. In like manner; also; moreover; too. For he seeth that wise men die, likewise the fool and the brutish person perish, and leave their wealth to others. Ps. 49.

**Lily-** Used for several white flowers. Also, 'lily of the valley' is used as a name for Jesus.

**Linen-** Cloth made from flax. Considered a higher quality type of cloth.

**Lion-** A large cat. The well-known and noble king of beasts, frequently spoken of in Scripture. He often exceeds eight feet in length and four feet in height; and his majestic and dauntless aspect, his prodigious strength and agility, and his peculiar roar, make him the terror of the forests.

**Lips-** The border of the mouth. Also used metaphorically for an edge or border, as of a cup (1Ki 7:26), a garment (Ex 28:32), a curtain (Ex 26:4), the sea (Ge 22:17), the Jordan (2Ki 2:13). To "open the lips" is to begin to speak (Job 11:5); to "refrain the lips" is to keep silence (Ps 40:9; 1Pe 3:10). The "fruit of the lips" (Heb 13:15) is praise, and the "calves of the lips" thank-offerings (Ho 14:2). To "shoot out the lip" is to manifest scorn and defiance (Ps 22:7).

**List-** A limit or boundary; a border.

**Live-** To engage in life. This word has many applications.

**Live / Walk by Faith-** Use true Biblical faith to direct how we live and walk in life.



**Lo-** exclaim. Look; see; behold; observe. This word is used to excite particular attention in a hearer to some object of sight, or subject of discourse. Lo, here is Christ. Matt 24. Lo, we turn to the Gentiles. Acts 13.

**Loaves-** Loaf is singular for bread. Loves is plural.

**Locusts-** A class of straight-winged insects. They are of many species. By the Mosaic law they were reckoned "clean" and were part of the diet of John the Baptist. Also, an invasion of locusts was the heaviest calamities that can befall a country.

**Lodge-** To pass the night Isa 10:29.

**Loins-** The part of man that is used to prefigure the seat of strength. Descendants are represented as coming out of the loins of a man. Ge 35:11; Heb 7:10. The loins were girded up for action and activity.

**Longsuffering-** Bearing injuries or provocation for a long time; patient; not easily provoked.

**Look-** The primary sense is to stretch, to extend, to shoot, hence to direct the eye.

**Loose-** To relax., to untie or unbind; to free from any fastening. Canst thou loose the bands of Orion? Job 38. Ye shall find an ass tied, and a colt with her; loose them, and bring them to me. Matt. 21.

**LORD –A** position / role in government and judgement. A lord is under a king and makes and enforces laws to cause people of the kingdom to accept the character of the king. The laws of the Lord of the Bible never change because God, as King, never changes (Malachi 3;6; Heb 13:8). In the Bible, God the Father is called "Lord" (upper-case), God the Son is called "Lord" (upper- case), and men are called "lord" (lower- case).

**Lord Christ-** A combination of the roles of the Son of God as "Lord" and as "Christ". All saved will be judged at the "judgment seat of Christ" for how well they obeyed "Christ", in this physical life, and received spiritual maturity.

**Lord Jesus-** A combination of the roles of the Son of God as "Lord" and as "Jesus". All saved will be judged at the "judgment seat of Christ" for how well they obeyed "Jesus", in this physical life, and followed His example for how to live in the flesh.

**Lord Jesus Christ-** A combination of all three roles. See the two prior notes for more details.

**Lord of all-** Our "Lord Jesus Christ" is "Lord" of all who all who accept Him in this life and will be "Lord" of all the

Earth when he returns to rule. All devils and men who reject Him will be cast into Hell or a similar place.

**Lord of Lords-** When our "Lord Jesus Christ" returns to rule this Earth, He will make all laws which those under Him will enforce.

**LORD Looketh on the Heart-** God judges not only actions but also the motivations for those actions.

**Lord's Supper-** a celebration to remind the saved about the sacrifice that our "Lord Jesus Christ" made to save us and to change us. It also is to remind the saved of their future meeting Him and judgment by Him.

**Lord and Call-** We are told to "call upon the Lord" for salvation and more. Please see the note for Romans 10:13, at [ljc1611kjv.com](http://ljc1611kjv.com) [1kjv.com](http://1kjv.com), for links to every place that these words are used together with a note explaining the context of each reference.

**Lordship-** The state of quality of being a lord; hence, a title of honor given to noblemen. 2. A titular compellation of judges and certain other persons in authority and office. 3. Dominion; power; authority. They who are accounted to rule over the Gentiles, exercise lordship over them. Mark 10.

**Lose-** To be deprived of something. To mislay; to part or be separated from a thing, so as to have no knowledge of the place where it is; as, to lose a book or a paper; to lose a record; to lose money.

**Lost-** The past- tense form of lose.

**Lot-** Abrahah m's nephew. A saved man who lived like he was lost and fathered two of the vilest tribes of people who are reported in the Bible.

**Lots-** Were often cast by the Jews, as well as other ancient nations, with the expectation, when God was appealed to, that he would so control them as to give a right direction in doubtful cases, Ps 22:18; 16:11; 18:18. They were often used by the divine appointment.

**Lowliness-** Freedom from pride; humility; humbleness of mind. Walk - with all lowliness and meekness. Eph. 4. Phil. 2.

**Lowly-** Having a low esteem of one's own worth; humble; meek; free from pride. Take my yoke upon you and learn of me, for I am meek and lowly in heart. Matt. 11. He scorneth the scornors; but he giveth grace to the lowly. Prov. 3.

**LOVE**– Bible calls true Biblical love doing what is necessary for the other person to receive spiritual cleansing and everlasting reward. The world calls lust love.

**Love of God**- Love that belongs to God and that he offers to man.

**Love one Another**- A commandment from our “Lord Jesus Christ” on how we are to treat other believers regardless what we feel about them and regardless of what others tell us.

**Love thy Neighbor**- A commandment from our “Lord Jesus Christ” too personally treat others like we want to be treated. “Jesus” said that this is the second most important commandment from God.

**Luke**- A Gentile medical doctor and author of the Gospel with his name and the book of Acts.

**Lucre**- Gain in money or goods; profit; usually in an ill sense, or with the sense of something base or unworthy. Peter modifies this word with "filthy" to tell us the spiritual value of all such.

**Lunatic**- A person affected by insanity, supposed to be influenced or produced by the moon, or by its position in its orbit; a madman.

**Lust**- Unlawful desire of carnal pleasure. Evil propensity; depraved affections and desires.

M

**Macedonia**- A place where Paul ministered. This is where Paul went after the Holy Ghost forbid him to go to other places and he had a vision to go here.

**Mad**- This word is used in the sense of 'very angry' in De 28:34; Joh 10:20; 1Co 14:23. It also denotes a reckless state of mind arising from various causes, as over-study (Ec 1:17; 2:12), blind rage (Lu 6:11), or a depraved temper (Ec 7:25; 9:3; 2Pe 2:16). David feigned madness (1Sa 21:13) at Gath because he "was sore afraid of Achish".

**Magistrate**- A public civil officer, invested with the executive government of some branch of it. In This sense, a king is the highest or first magistrate, as is the President of the United States. But the word is more particularly applied to subordinate officers, as governors, intendants, prefects, mayors, justices of the peace, and the like.

**Magnificence**- . Grandeur of appearance; greatness and splendor of show or state; as the magnificence of a palace or of a procession; the magnificence of a Roman triumph.

**Magnified**- To make great or greater; to increase the apparent dimensions of a body or to extol; to exalt in description or praise.

**Maid**- A girl or young female; of an unmarried woman or virgin, and of a female servant or handmaid.

**Maiden**- A young unmarried woman; a virgin or a female servant.

**Maimed**- Crippled; disabled in limbs; lame.

**Maintain**- To hold, preserve or keep in any particular state or condition; to support; to sustain; not to suffer to fail or decline; as, to maintain a certain degree of heat in a furnace; to maintain the digestive process or powers of the stomach; to maintain the fertility of soil; to maintain present character or reputation.

**Majesty**- Greatness of appearance; dignity; grandeur; dignity of aspect or manner; the quality or state of a person or thing which inspires awe or reverence in the beholder; applied with peculiar propriety to God and his works. Jehovah reigneth; he is clothed with majesty. Ps.93. The voice of Jehovah is full of majesty. Ps.29.

**Male**- Among animals, one of the sex whose office is to beget young; a he- animal. 1. In botany, a plant of flower which produces stamens only, without pistils.

**Malefactor**- One who commits a crime; one guilty of violating the laws, in such a manner as to subject him to public prosecution and punishment, particularly to capital punishment; a criminal.

**Malice**- Extreme enmity of heart, or malevolence; a disposition to injure others without cause, from mere personal gratification or from a spirit of revenge; unprovoked malignity or spite.

**Maliciousness**- The quality of being malicious; extreme enmity or disposition to injure; malignity.

**Malignity**- Extreme enmity, or evil dispositions of heart towards another; malice without provocation, or malevolence with baseness of heart; deep rooted spite.

**Mammon**- Riches, wealth.

**Manifest**– reveal in every possible way.

**Manifold**- Many and fold. Of divers kinds; many in number; numerous; multiplied. O Lord, how manifold are thy works! Ps.104.

**Manger**- The ledge or projection in the end of the room used as a stall on which the hay or other food of the animals of travelers was placed.

**Manna**- Literally means: 'What is it?' When God dropped food from the sky for the wandering Jews, they did not know what it was nor what to call it.

**Manner: (singular)**- Form; method; way of performing or executing.

**Manners: (plural)**- Proper form of action. Deportment; carriage; behavior; conduct; course of life; in a moral sense. Evil communications corrupt good manners. 1 Cor.15.

**Mansion**- The house of the lord of a manor. A larger and better house than others around about have.

**Manuscript**- A copy of a copy of a copy there are no originals

**Marble**- A particular type of stone. As a mineral, consists of carbonate of lime, its texture varying from the highly crystalline to the compact.

**Mark (person)**- A preacher's servant and writer of the Gospel which tells us that "Jesus" is our example servant.

**Mark (sign)**- A visible line made by drawing one substance on another; as a mark made by chalk or charcoal, or a pen.

**Market**- A large open area in many ancient cities, especially of Greece and Rome, having the public market on one side only, the other sides of the are being occupied by temples, theatres, colonnades, courts of justice, baths, and other public structures, the whole square often presenting a magnificent appearance. Here was the city exchange, the focus to which converged all the lines of public life.

**Marketplace**- Any place of public resort, and hence a public place or broad street (Mt 11:16; 20:3), as well as a forum or market- place proper, where goods were exposed for sale, and where public assemblies and trials were held (Ac 16:19; 17:17).

**Marriage / Wedding**- The joining of a man and woman in a life- long relationship with a spiritual contract which is recognized by the court of God. It was instituted in Paradise when man was in innocence (Ge 2:18- 24).

Here we have its original charter, which was confirmed by our Lord, as the basis on which all regulations are to be framed (Mt 19:4- 5). It is evident that monogamy was the original law of marriage (Mt 19:5; 1Co 6:16).

**Marry**- To unite in wedlock or matrimony; to join a man and woman for life, and constitute them man and wife according to the laws or customs of a nation and of God.

**Marrow**- A soft oleaginous substance contained in the cavities of animal bones.

**Martyr**- One who bears witness of the truth, and suffers death in the cause of Christ (Ac 22:20; Re 2:13; 17:6). In This sense Stephen was the first martyr.

**Marvel**- A wonder; that which arrests the attention and causes a person to stand or gaze, or to pause.

**Master**- A man who rules, governs or directs either men or business. This word is also used to identify a teacher.

**Matter**- The very thing supposed or intended. In science, we are told that this physical reality is composed of matter or energy with light being both. Our senses allow us to sense matter. This word is also used for affair; business; event; thing; course of things. That is, anything which can be sensed.

**Matthew**- One of the apostles and writer of the Gospel with his name. Two of his brothers were also apostles. He was a tax collector, a government employee. As such, he was concerned with matters of the law and his Gospel presents the life of "Jesus" as He fulfilled the entire law of God.

**Mean (singular) / Meant**- Means is the past- tense form of mean. To have in the mind, view or contemplation; to intend. What mean you By this service? Ex.12. Also, wanting dignity of mind; low minded; base; destitute of honor; spiritless.

**Means (plural)**- Means, in the plural, income, revenue, resources, substance or estate, considered as the instrument of effecting any purpose.

**Measure**- This word specifies a way to figure proportional values. The whole extent or dimensions of a thing, including length, breadth and thickness. It is applied also to length or to breadth separately. It can also specify a quantity or value such as when applied to money. Please see the note for John 6:7, at [ljc1611kjv.com1kjv.com](http://ljc1611kjv.com1kjv.com), for various Biblical measurements.

**Meal**- The substance of edible grain ground to fine particles, and not bolted or sifted.

**Meats**- the substance of food. In “the word of God” this includes vegetable matter. It is also used, symbolically, for the substance of religion such as religious rules controlling behavior.

**Mediator**- One that interposes between parties at variance for the purpose of reconciling them. Our "Lord Jesus Christ" is the only mediator accepted by God to reconcile man to God.

**Meditate**– Is thinking about a given subject and how to apply it in your life.

**Meek**– Power under Gods control. This is totally different from weak.

**Meet**- Men define meet as 'come together' but the Biblical meaning of the word is 'come together and match in every area'. As a “helpmeet”, the wife is to be involved in every aspect of the life of her husband which affects the marriage relationship.

**Melchizedek / Melchisedec**- A Christophany, an appearance of Christ in the Old Testament.

**Melody**- An agreeable succession of sounds; a succession of sounds so regulated and modulated as to please the ear. To constitute melody, the sounds must be arranged according to the laws of rhythms, measure, or the due proportion of the movements to each other. Melody differs from harmony, as it consists in the agreeable succession and modulation of sounds by a single voice; whereas harmony consists in the accordance of different voices or sounds. Melody is vocal or instrumental. To make melody in the heart, to praise God with a joyful and thankful disposition, ascribing to him the honor due to his name. Eph.5.

**Member**- A part of the whole. A limb of animal bodies, as a leg, an arm, an ear, a finger, that is, a subordinate part of the main body. Saved people are to be members of Christ's body, which is the local church.

**Memorial**- Something used to preserve memory.

**Mention**- To put in mind. A hint; a suggestion; a brief notice or remark expressed in words or writing to cause the hearer or reader to think about what is mentioned.

**Merchandise**- The objects of commerce; wares, goods, commodities, whatever is usually bought or sold in trade.

**Merchant**- The person who deals with merchandise in trade or commerce.

**Mercy**– Not getting the punishment that you deserved.

**Merry**- Noisy; jovial; exhilarated to laughter. Man is the merriest species of the creation.

**Message**- Any notice, word or communication, written or verbal, sent from one person to another.

**Messenger**- The one who delivers the message from another. Many people blame the messenger when they reject the message but, as God says, they actually reject the Being who sent the message.

**Messiah / Messias**- The Old Testament title that matches Christ in the new Testament.

**Mete**- To measure; to ascertain quantity, dimensions or capacity by any rule or standard. Please see the note for John 6:7, at [ljc1611kjv.com1kjv.com](http://ljc1611kjv.com1kjv.com), for various Biblical measurements.

**Michael**- The only archangel mentioned by name in the Bible. Religions try to add their own claims just like they try to say that the role reserved for our “Lord Jesus Christ” can be fulfilled by other beings.

**Midst**- In the middle.

**Midnight**- The middle of the night; twelve o'clock at night.

**Might**- Having great bodily strength or physical power; very strong or vigorous; as a mighty arm.

**Milk**- A white fluid or liquor, secreted by certain glands in female animals, and drawn from the breasts for the nourishment of their young. Pre- digested food.

**Millstone**- A stone used for grinding grain.

**Mind**- The thinking process and conclusion of that process. This word is also used for the physical organ which is used for this process but the true meaning is the process and not the organ.

**Mind Jesus**- Think about how Jesus would handle a circumstance and follow His example. Please see the Doctrinal Study called [What Would Jesus Do?](#) At [ljc1611kjv.com1kjv.com](http://ljc1611kjv.com1kjv.com) for references in the Gospels where God told us what he would actually do and that study does not include the additions from devil- motivated liars.

**Mind of Christ**- the way to think which causes spiritual maturing. It starts with a humble attitude.

**Mingle**- To mix or blend without order or promiscuously in one body. This word is used when combining items which retain their unique properties even after being

mingled such as when vinegar and oil are mingled to make a salad dressing.

**Minister-** The persona and attitudes and actions of a servant.

**Ministration-** The act of performing service as a subordinate agent; agency; intervention for aid or service.

**Minstrel-** (Mt 9:23), a flute- player. Such music was a usual accompaniment of funerals. In 2Ki 3:15 it denotes a player on a stringed instrument.

**Ministry-** The God- given work to build the kingdom of God here on earth. Please see the Study of [Proverbs 9](#), at [ljc1611kjv.com1kjv.com](http://ljc1611kjv.com1kjv.com), for "How Wisdom Builds a Ministry".

**Mint-** One of the garden herbs of which the Pharisees paid tithes (Mt 23:23; Lu 11:42). It grows wild in some places like Michigan.

**Miracle-** An act by a spiritual being, in this physical reality, which goes outside of the laws of this physical reality. Such is physically impossible. Note: devils and angels can do miracles just like God does but God must allow them to do the miracles. I have personally had multiple medical people tell me, multiple times, that I had undeniable personal miracles. Therefore, I base this definition on personal experience as well as on study. Please see the Doctrinal Studies, at [ljc1611kjv.com1kjv.com](http://ljc1611kjv.com1kjv.com). for [Miracles in Gospels](#), [Miracles in OT](#), and in the [Significant Events in the New Testament](#).

**Mischief-** Harm; hurt; injury; damage; evil, whether intended or not. Intentional injury; harm or damage done by design.

**Miserable-** Very poorly or meanly; wretchedly. Actions designed to cause misery or unhappiness.

**Miserably-** Done in a miserable manner.

**Misery-** Great unhappiness; extreme pain of body or mind. A man suffers misery from the gout, or from great afflictions, distress, calamity, and other evils. Misery expresses somewhat less than wretchedness. Misery is as really the fruit of vice reigning in the heart, as tares are the produce of tares sown in the field.

**Mist-** Mist is caused by particles of water vapor filling the air until it is only partially transparent.

**Mite-** the coin of least value.

**Mixture-** A mass or compound, consisting of different ingredients blended without order.

**Mock-** Properly, to imitate; to mimic; hence, to imitate in contempt or derision; to mimic for the sake of derision; to deride by mimicry.

**Mocker-** One who mocks.

**Money-** What is used in exchange for merchandise. Mention is made of money as early as Ge 17:12- 13, where persons are said to be 'bought with money'.

**Moon-** Reflects the light of the Sun. Similarly, the saved are to reflect the spiritual light of our "Lord Jesus Christ". It is used, symbolically, for the wife of Jacob. In Revelation, "the moon became as blood" to symbolically show that the witness of God's people was to be the blood of our "Lord Jesus Christ" is the only means of true salvation. Also, in Revelation, the light of the moon was cut by one third to symbolically show that God had removed the church and that the only true spiritual light came from the saved Jews.

**Moon, New-** The first day of the lunar month was observed as a holy day. It symbolically represented someone getting saved and starting to reflect the light of our "Lord Jesus Christ".

**Morning-** The first part of the day, beginning at midnight and extending to twelve at noon.

**Morrow-** The day next after the present.

**Mortal-** Subjection to death or the necessity of dying.

**Mosaic Law Added-** The Mosaic Law was added to promises already established by God. We are saved by believing God's promise like Abraham did. Neither the adding of the Mosaic Law, nor the taking away of it change the promises of God which were already established.

**Moses-** While This name is often used for the physical man, it is also used in the Bible to refer to the Law that God gave to His people through the man. In the New Testament, the Law for the saved comes from the "Lord Jesus Christ".

**Note-** Any small particle or splinter. It is used to illustrate small failings in contrast to larger faults, called 'beams'.

**Moth-** An animal of the genus Phalaena, which breeds in yard and garments, and often does injury by eating the substance and destroying the texture. Matt.6. From This the lesson is drawn to lay up treasures in heaven, where neither moth nor rust can corrupt or destroy. Job 13:28. Ps 39:11; Isa 51:8; Mt 6:19- 20; Jas 5:2.

**Mother-** The woman who gives birth to a child. There are also 'mothers' in the church, who have the Lord's interests at heart in the welfare of the saints, as Paul called the mother of Rufus his own mother also. Ro 16:13.

**Mount of Olives / Mount of Olivet-** The mountain range on the east of Jerusalem, separated from the city by the Kidron valley. It doubtless derived its name from the olive- trees that grew on it.

**Mount of Transfiguration-** Where our "Lord Jesus Christ" first revealed His glory which he will display while he rules this world.

**Mountain-** A large mass of earth and rock, rising above the common level of the earth or adjacent land, but of no definite altitude. We apply mountain to the largest eminences on the globe. The word is applied to a single elevation, or to an extended range.

**Mourn-** To express grief or sorrow; to grieve; to be sorrowful. Mourning may be expressed by weeping or audible sounds, or by sobs, sighs or inward silent grief.

**Mouth-** The aperture in the head of an animal, between the lips, by which he utters his voice and receives food. In a more general sense, the mouth consists of the lips, the gums, the insides of the cheeks, the palate, the saliva glands, the uvula and tonsils. It is sometimes used in Scripture for speaker, Ex 4:16; Jer 15:19.

**Multiply-** To increase in number with multiple additions.

**Multitude-** The state of being many; a great number.

**Murder-** The act of unlawfully killing a human being with premeditated malice, by a person of sound mind.

**Murmur-** To grumble; to complain; to utter complaints in a low, half articulated voice; to utter sullen discontent; with at, before the thing which is the cause of discontent; as, murmur not at sickness; or with at or against, before the active agent which produces the evil. The Jews murmured at him. John 6. The people murmured against Moses. Ex.13.

**Muse-** To ponder; to think closely; to study in silence. When the Greek prefix of "a" is added to a word, it is made to express the not of the word. Thus, the word 'amusement' means: something to turn off the brain and cause people to stop thinking.

**Music / Musick-** Melody or harmony; any succession of sounds so modulated as to please the ear, or any combination of simultaneous sounds in accordance or harmony. Music is supposed to express joy. God

commands His people to use music in worship to express the joy that God gives.

**Murmur-** Talking, in a low voice, against the authority that God gives to a man.

**Must-** absolutely required, not optional.

**Must Needs-** A need which can not be denied. Please see the note for Romans 13:5, at [ljc1611kjb.com1kjb.com](http://ljc1611kjb.com1kjb.com), for references to every place in the Bible where we see this phrase along with an explanation of how it is used within the context.

**Mustard-** A plant of the genus Sinapis, and its seed, which has a pungent taste and is a powerful stimulant. It is used externally in cataplasms, and internally as a diuretic and stimulant. It is used in an example in the 'Parable of the Mustard Seed'. Please see the Doctrinal Study called: [Parables of the New Testament](http://ljc1611kjb.com1kjb.com), at [ljc1611kjb.com1kjb.com](http://ljc1611kjb.com1kjb.com). for the explanation of that parable.

**Muzzle-** To bind the mouth; to fasten the mouth to prevent biting or eating.

**Mutual-** Reciprocal; interchanged, each acting in return or correspondence to the other; given and received.

**Myrrh-** A gum- resin that comes in the form of drops or globules of various colors and sizes, of a pretty strong but agreeable smell, and of a bitter taste. In the Bible, it is used as an ingredient of the holy anointing oil (Ex 30:23), It is, therefore, used, symbolically, to recognize Deity. That is why it was one of the gifts given to the child "Jesus" as a gift from wise men.

**MYSTERY-** is something that God hid until He finally revealed if you are mature enough, spiritually, for Him to reveal it to you.

## N

**Nail-** Used for fastening.

**Nakedness-** Want of covering or clothing; nudity; bareness. Want of means of defense. There is much doctrinal error taught about this word. Religion puts rules on women. "The word of God" puts the rules on men and tells them to lead in this matter by example. Both Peter and Mark are called "naked" when they were wearing the equivalent of shorts but their chests were not covered.

**Name**- How a person is identified including their power and authority.

**Name, the**- The phrase of: "in the name of" means: 'In the power and authority of the person identified by the name'. Thus, "whosoever shall call upon the name of the Lord" means: 'Anyone who trusts in the power of our Lord Jesus Christ as their personal Lord'.

**Name of Christ**- The power and authority of the Son of God to cause saved people to mature spiritually after their initial salvation.

**Name of Lord**- the power and authority to judge us and to change our legal record in Heaven as when he blots out our sin record and He legally adopts us as "children of God".

**Nathanael**- One of the twelve (12) apostles. Also called Bartholomew, which means 'son of Tolami'.

**Nation**- A body of people inhabiting the same country, or united under the same sovereign or government.

**Naphtali / Nephthalim**- The first son of Jacob and Rachel, who was his favorite wife. This name is used for the son, his descendants and the part of the promised land given to his descendants.

**Napkin**- A "sweat-cloth", a cloth for wiping the sweat from the face. But the word is used of a wrapper to fold money in (Lu 19:20), and as an article of dress, a "handkerchief" worn on the head (Ac 19:12).

**Narrow**- Of little breadth; not wide or broad; having little distance from side to side.

**Nature**- The inherent qualities of a being manifested in the various characteristics which mark and display its existence: the aggregate of such qualities is what is termed its nature, and one class or order of being is thus distinguished from another.

**Natural**- Identifies things which obey the laws of This physical world.

**Naughtiness**- Badness; corrupt; wickedness; evil principle or purpose. I know thy pride and the naughtiness of thy heart. 1Samuel 17.

**Nay**- a contracted word, to deny. A word that expresses negation.

**Nazareth**- The home of Joseph and Mary (Lu 2:39) the home of Joseph and Mary (Lu 2:39).

**Necessary**- That must be; that cannot be otherwise; indispensably requisite. It is necessary that every effect should have a cause.

**Neck**- The part of an animal's body which is between the head and the trunk, and connects them. It is also used symbolically in "the word of God". A stiff neck, in Scripture, denotes obstinacy in sin. To harden the neck, to grow obstinate; to be more and more perverse and rebellious. Nehemiah 9."Lay down necks," means: risked their lives (Ro 16:4). Ps 18:40, "Thou hast given... necks of enemies," means: made them turn their backs in flight before me (Keil); so Ex 23:27, or enabled me to put my foot on their necks, subjecting them utterly to me; as Jos 10:24; 11:8,12; Ps 110:5. There are other applications in addition to these.

**Need**- To compel, to lack; to require, as supply or relief.

**Needle**- used only in the proverb, "to pass through a needle's eye" (Mt 19:24; Mr 10:25; Lu 18:25). Some interpret the expression as referring to the side gate, close to the principle gate, usually called the "eye of a needle" in the East; but it is rather to be taken literally. The Hebrew females were skilled in the use of the needle (Ex 28:39; 26:36; Jg 5:30).

**Neglect**- To let, to leave, to suffer to pass. The sense of the latter words then is to leave behind, or permit to remain.

**Neighbor / Neighbour**- Our Savior informs us that the whole world was neighbors; that we ought not to do to another what they would not have done to themselves; and that this charity extended even to enemies. See the beautiful parable of the Good Samaritan, the real neighbor to the distressed, Lu 10:29.

**Nephew**- The son of a brother or sister. In the Bible, this includes a grandson; also any descendant.

**Nest**- The place or bed formed or used by a bird for incubation or the mansion of her young, until they are able to fly. The word is used also for the bed in which certain insects deposit their eggs.

**Net**- An instrument for catching men or fish or fowls or wild beasts.

**Nevertheless**- Not the less; notwithstanding; that is, in opposition to any thing, or without regarding it.

**New Covenant**- Please see the note for [Hebrews 10:28-29](#), at [ljc1611kjv.com](http://ljc1611kjv.com) for the explanation of how the New Covenant replaces only the religious part of the Mosaic Law.

**New Creatures**- Spiritually, created new with a totally different nature.

**New Testament**- Please see the note for [Hebrews 10:28-29](#), at [ljc1611kjv.com](#)[1kjv.com](#), for the explanation of how the New Testament replaces only the religious part of the Mosaic Law.

**Nicodemus**- He was Pharisee and a ruler of the Jews who received true Biblical salvation as shown by his changed life.

**Nicolaitans**- There is a controversy about who the Nicolaitanes were and what their doctrine was. However, their doctrine was from a devil and our "Lord Jesus Christ" hates all doctrines from devils.

**Night**- The time of darkness within a day. This word is used symbolically for:

- The time of distress (Isa 21:12).
- Death, the time when life's day is over (Joh 9:4).
- Children of night, i.e. dark deeds, filthiness, which shuns daylight (1Th 5:5).
- The present life, compared with the believer's bright life to come (Ro 13:12).
- Death, a time "when no man can work." Joh 9:4.
- The moral darkness of the world, in which men sleep and are drunken. 1Th 5:7.
- The period of Christ's rejection, which is far spent, and the 'day' at hand. Ro 13:12. There will be no night of moral or spiritual darkness in the heavenly Jerusalem. Re 21:25; 22:5.

**No Corruption**- Only things in Heaven, or people who have received their new body, will have no corruption.

**No Difference in People**- Men make differences based upon physical attributes. But God looks at us spiritually and sees no differences in us, only differences in our spiritual condition, our attitudes and our actions.

**No Respector of Persons**- God ignores all Earthly positions and attributes and deals with everyone the same when it comes to salvation and His law.

**No Tears in Heaven** is a lying doctrine from devils. Please see the note for [Revelation 21:4](#), at [ljc1611kjv.com](#)[1kjv.com](#), for the truth about this lie.

**Noe / Noah**- God's preacher for 120 years before the flood.

**Noble**- Great; elevated; exalted; dignified; being above everything that can dishonor reputation; as a noble mind; a noble courage; noble deeds of valor.

**Noise**- Sound of any kind, or proceeding from any cause, as the sound made by the organ and of speech, by the wings of an insect, the rushing of the wind, or the roaring of the sea, of cannon or thunder, a low sound, a high sound, etc.; a word of general signification.

**Notable**- Remarkable; worthy of notice; memorable; observable; distinguished or noted.

**Notwithstanding**- there is nothing in the prior arguments that can stand against God's truth and win an argument.

**NOW** – after you understand what was just said.

**Number**- Used to count things



**Oath**- A solemn affirmation or declaration, made with an appeal to God for the truth of what is affirmed.

**Obey**- To comply with the commands, orders or instructions of a superior, or with the requirements of law, moral, political or municipal; to do that which is commanded or required, or to forbear doing that which is prohibited.

**Observe**- The sense is to hold in view, or to keep the eyes on. 1. To see or behold with some attention.

**Obtain**- Gained; procured; acquired.

**Occasion**- an occurrence, casualty, incident; something distinct from the ordinary course or regular orders of things.

**Occupation**- That which engages the time and attention; employment; business.

**Occupy**- To take possession. The person who first occupies land which has no owner, has the right of property.

**Odor / Odour**- smell; scent; fragrance; a sweet or an offensive smell; perfume.

**OF** –belongs to. The "word of God" is the written set of life commandments which belong to God.

**Offence**- a violation or breach of a law, custom, rule, etc.



**Offend**- To displease, to make angry; to affront. It expresses rather less than make angry, and without any modifying word, it is nearly synonymous with displease.

**Offer**- Presented for acceptance or rejection; presented in worship or devotion; immolated; bid; presented to the eye or the mind.

**Office**- A particular duty, charge or trust conferred by public authority and for a public purpose; an employment undertaken by commission or authority from government or those who administer it.

**Officer**- A person commissioned or authorized to perform any public duty. Officers are civil, military or ecclesiastical. There are great officers of state, and subordinate officers.

**Offspring**- A child or children; a descendant or descendants, however remote from the stock. Act. 17. Rev. 22.

**Oftentimes**- often and times. Frequently; often; many.

**Oil**- An unctuous substance expressed or drawn from several animal and vegetable substances. The distinctive characters of oil are inflammability, fluidity, and insolubility in water. Oils are fixed or fat, and volatile or essential. They have a smooth feel, and most of them have little taste or smell. Animal oil is found in all animal substances. Vegetable oils are produced by expression, infusion or distillation.

**ointment**- An oily or unctuous substance, usually compounded of oil with various spices and resins and aromatics, and preserved in small alabaster boxes or cruses, in which the delicious aroma was best preserved.

**OLD TESTAMENT** – religious part of mosaic law

**Olive**- A plant or tree of the genus Olea. It is a source of food and oil used for lamps and other purposes.

**Olive Tree**- Used symbolically, in "the word of God", for Spirit controlled people of God.

**Omega** - - The first and last letters of the Greek alphabet, hence, symbolically, "beginning and end"; in Revelation "The Eternal One" in Re 1:8.

**Open**- Not shut. Unsealed; as an open letter.

**Openly**- Publicly; not in private; without secrecy; as, to avow our sins and follies openly.

**Operate**- To act; to exert power or strength, physical or mechanical.

**Oppose**- To set; against; to put in opposition, with a view to counterbalance or countervail, and thus to hinder defeat, destroy or prevent effect; as, to oppose one argument to another.

**Opportunity**- Fit or convenient time; a time favorable for the purpose; suitable time combined with other favorable circumstances. Suitableness of time is the predominant signification, but it includes generally circumstances of place and other conveniences adapted to the end desired.

**Oppress**- To load or burden with unreasonable impositions; to treat with unjust severity, rigor or hardship; as, to oppress a nation with taxes or contributions; to oppress one by compelling him to perform unreasonable service.

**Or**- A connective that marks an alternative. It offers a choice between two or more items.

**Oration**- A speech or discourse composed according to the rules of oratory, and spoken in public.

**Oracle**- Among Christians, oracles, in the plural, denotes the communications, revelations or messages delivered by God to prophets. In this sense it is rarely used in the singular; but we say, the oracles of God, divine oracles, meaning the Scriptures.

**Ordain**- To establish in a particular office or order; hence, to invest with a ministerial function; to introduce and establish or settle in the pastoral office with the customary forms and solemnities; as, to ordain a minister of the gospel.

**Ordinance**- A rule established by authority; a permanent rule of action. An ordinance may be a law or statute of sovereign power. In this sense it is often used in the Scriptures. Ex. 15. Num. 10. Ezra 3.

**Order**- Regular disposition or methodical arrangement of things; a word of extensive application; as the order of troops or parade; the order of books in a library; the order of proceedings in a legislative assembly.

**Onesimus**- a run- away slave who was saved, trained and then sent out as a preacher by his former owner.

**Outside**- The external part of a thing; the part, end or side which forms the surface or superficies.

**Outward**- External; exterior; forming the superficial part; as the outward coat of an onion; an outward garment.

**Overcharge**- To charge or load to excess; to cloy; to oppress.

**Overcome**- To conquer; to vanquish; to subdue; as, to overcome enemies in battle. To surmount; to get the better of; as, to overcome difficulties or obstacles.

**Overshadow**- To shelter; to protect; to cover with protecting influence.

**Overtaken**- To come up with in a course, pursuit, progress or motion; to catch.

**Overthrown**- To turn upside down. To ruin; to demolish. To defeat; to conquer.

**Overthrown / Overthrew**- Past- tense forms of overthrow.

**Oven**- An arch of brick or stone work, for baking bread and other things for food. Ovens are made in chimneys or set in the open air.

**Owe**- To be indebted; to be obliged or bound to pay.

**Own**- Belonging to; possessed; peculiar; usually expressing property with emphasis, or in express exclusion of others.

**Owner**- The rightful proprietor; one who has the legal or rightful title, whether he is the possessor or not. The ox knoweth his owner. Is. 1.

**Ox**- The male of the bovine genus of quadrupeds, castrated and grown to his size or nearly so. The young male is called in America a steer. The same animal not castrated is called a bull.

## P

**Paid**- The past- tense form of pay.

**Pay**- To discharge a debt; to deliver to a creditor the value of the debt, either in money or goods, to his acceptance or satisfaction, by which the obligation of the debtor is discharged.

**Pain**- An uneasy sensation in animal bodies, of any degree from slight uneasiness to extreme distress or torture, proceeding from pressure, tension or spasm,

separation of parts by violence, or any derangement of functions.

**Palace**- Used now only of royal dwellings, although originally meaning simply (as the Latin word palatium, from which it is derived, shows) a building surrounded by a fence or a paling.

**Palsy**- Or paralysis, strikes sometimes one side or portion of the body, and sometimes the whole; affecting the power of motion, or the power of sensation, or both. It is one of the least curable of diseases; but the Savior healed it with a word, Mt 4:24; 12:10; Mr 2:3- 12.

**Paps**- Human breasts.

**Parable**- A story based in This physical reality that conveys a hidden spiritual truth. "Jesus" used parables to hide the truth from lost and carnal people while revealing it the saved and spiritual through the "Holy Spirit". That is why there are a lot of doctrinal errors taught about parables in "the word of God". Please see the Doctrinal Studies called [Table of Parables in the New Testament](#) and [Table of Parables in the Old Testament](#). Those Studies have links to where these parables can be found in "the word of God", and the links, to the New Testament, will take the reader to where every parable is given its true spiritual meaning.

**Paradise**- A place of bliss; a region of supreme felicity or delight. This word was used for the holding place where Old Testament saints were kept until our "Lord Jesus Christ" paid for their sins and then took them to Heaven. It is also used to describe Heaven.

**Parent**- A father or mother; he or she that produces young. The duties of parents to their children are to maintain, protect and educate them.

**Partake**- To take a part, portion or share in common with others; to have a share or part; to participate.

**Partakers**- One who has or takes a part, share or portion in common with others; a sharer; a participator.

**Partiality**- Inclination to favor one party or one side of a question more than the other; an undue bias of mind towards one party or side, which is apt to warp the judgment. Partiality springs from the will and affections, rather than from a love of truth and justice.

**Particularly**- Distinct notice or specification of particulars.

**Partner**- One who partakes or shares with another; a partaker; an associate; as, she is partner of my life, of my joys, of my griefs.

**Path**- A way beaten or trodden by the feet of man or beast, or made hard by wheels; that part of a highway on which animals or carriages ordinarily pass; applied to the ground only, and never to a paved street in a city.

**Patience**- The suffering of afflictions, pain, toil, calamity, provocation or other evil, with a calm, unruffled temper; endurance without murmuring or fretfulness.

**Patient**- Having the quality of enduring evils without murmuring or fretfulness; sustaining afflictions of body or mind with fortitude, calmness or Christian submission to the divine will; as a patient person, or a person of patient temper.

**Patriarch**- Head of a family, applied in the N.T. to Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob as ancestors of the Israelites, and to the twelve sons of Jacob. David also is thus designated. Ac 2:29; 7:8- 9; Heb 7:4. In other passages the same persons are called 'the fathers'.

**Passion**- impression or effect of an external agent upon a body; that which is suffered or received.

**Passed Away**- Past-tense expression of dead. It can be applied to a whole person or a character trait which they no longer have such as a lifestyle sin.

**Passover**- pass and over. A feast of the Jews, instituted to commemorate the providential escape of the Hebrews, in Egypt, when God smiting the first-born of the Egyptians, passed over the houses of the Israelites, which were marked with the blood of the paschal lamb. Please see the note for John 11:55, at [ljc1611kjv.com](http://ljc1611kjv.com), for links to the three different Passovers mentioned in the Gospels.

**Pastor**- A sheep herder. Our "Lord Jesus Christ" is the true pastor of a local church with the man working under Him.

**Pasture**- Grass for the food of cattle; the food of cattle taken by grazing. 2. Ground covered with grass appropriated for the food or cattle.

**Pattern**- An original or model proposed for imitation; the archetype; an exemplar; that which is to be copied or imitated, either in things or in actions; as the pattern of a machine; a pattern of patience. Christ was the most perfect pattern of rectitude, patience and submission ever exhibited on earth.

**Paul**- Was a Pharisee before he was saved. Started more churches and wrote more of the New Testament than any other man.

**Peace**- In a general sense, a state of quiet or tranquility; freedom from disturbance or agitation; applicable to society, to individuals, or to the temper of the mind.

**Peace of God**- Peace that belongs to God. He gives this peace to saved people who truly trust that God is in control even while they go through a storm of life.

**Peace with God**- This is what people receive when they truly Biblically repent and submit to God's will for their life. This is the assurance that they will receive mercy from God and not the punishment that they truly deserve.

**Pearl**- Pearls are a stony concretion in a species of oyster and were valued greatly as an ornamentation. They are used symbolically for something spiritual which is beautiful and of great value while also resulting from the persecution of a living thing.

**Peculiar**- Exclusive property; that which belongs to a person in exclusion of others.

**Pence**- A piece of money which has little value currently. It started out as the common wage for a day's work.

**Penny**- The current replacement for a pence. It was the daily pay of a Roman soldier in the time of Christ. In the reign of Edward III. an English penny was a laborer's day's wages.

**Pentecost**- The fiftieth day (from a Greek word meaning fiftieth), or Harvest Feast, or Feast of Weeks, may be regarded as a supplement to the Passover. It lasted for but one day.

**People**- The body of persons who compose a community, town, city or nation.

**Perceive**- To have knowledge or receive impressions of external objects through the medium or instrumentality of the senses or bodily organs; as, to perceive light or color; to perceive the cold or ice or the taste of honey.

**PERDITION**- Utter destruction.

**Perfect**- having attained spiritual maturity or complete in the manner being addressed.

**Perfect Love**- Love from God which is supposed to be expressed by the spiritually mature saved person.

**Perform**- per and formo, to make. To do; to execute; to accomplish; to execute; to discharge.

**Peril**- Danger; risk; hazard; jeopardy; particular exposure of person or property to injury, loss or destruction from any cause whatever.

**Perish**- To die; to lose life in any manner; applied to animals. To waste away.

**Perplex**- To make intricate; to involve; to entangle; to make complicated and difficult to be understood or unraveled.

**Permit**- To allow; to grant leave or liberty to by express consent or by silent consent or by not prohibiting.

**Persecute**- To infliction of pain, punishment or death upon others unjustly, particularly for adhering to a religious creed or mode of worship, either by way of penalty or for compelling them to renounce their principles.

**Perseverance**- Persistence in the face of opposition. In theology (especially in the phrase "final perseverance") the word has come to denote a special persistency, the undying continuance of the new life (manifested in faith and holiness) given by the Spirit of God to man.

**Person**- An individual human being consisting of body and soul. We apply the word to living beings only, possessed of a rational nature; the body when dead is not called a person.

**Persuade**- Influenced or drawn to an opinion or determination by argument, advice or reasons suggested; convinced; induced.

**Pertain**- To belong; to be the property, right or duty of.

**Perverse**- See Pervert. 1. Literally, turned aside; hence, distorted from the right.

**Pervert**- To turn from truth, propriety, or from its proper purpose; to distort from its true use or end; as, to pervert reason by misdirecting it; to pervert the laws by misinterpreting and misapplying them; to pervert justice; to pervert the meaning of an author; to pervert nature; to pervert truth.

**Pestilence**- Another word for plague. Any sudden fatal epidemic is designated by this word, and in its Biblical use it generally indicates that these are divine visitations.

**Peter**- Also called Simon and Cephas. The head of the apostles and writer of two books in the New Testament.

**Petition**- To ask, properly to urge or press. 1. In a general sense, a request, supplication or prayer; but chiefly and appropriately, a solemn or formal supplication; a prayer addressed by a person to the Supreme Being, for something needed or desired, or a branch or particular article of prayer.

**Pharisee**- A sect of Jews at the time of Jesus. They kept the most strident religious laws but were condemned by "Jesus" for ignoring the moral law and their personal relationship with God.

**Pharaoh**- King of Egypt in ancient times.

**Philip**- One of the twelve apostles who went and brought Nathaniel to "Jesus". Also, one of the first deacons who became an evangelist.

**Philippi**- City in the east of Macedonia. It was founded by Philip the father of Alexander the Great, from whom it derived its name. It was the first European city visited by Paul. His preaching was blessed to the conversion of Lydia and others.

**Philosophy**- A general term denoting an explanation of the reasons of things; or an investigation of the causes of all phenomena both of mind and of matter using worldly reasoning.

**Phylacteries**- Little rolls of parchment, in which were written certain words of the law, and which were worn by the Jews upon their foreheads, and upon the left arm. The custom was founded on a mistaken interpretation of Ex 13:9,16, "And it shall be for a taken upon thy hand, and for frontlets between thine eyes".

**Physician**- A person who claims to be practitioner of healing. This word is sometimes used for magicians because healing is not understood by many people and many lying magicians claim to heal.

**Pierce**- To thrust into with a pointed instrument; as, to pierce the body with a sword or spear; to pierce the side with a thorn.

**Pigeon**- Young pigeons are mentioned as among the offerings which, by divine appointment, Abram presented unto the Lord (Ge 15:9). They were afterwards enumerated among the sin-offerings (Le 1:14; 12:6), and the law provided that those who could not offer a lamb might offer two young pigeons (Le 5:7; comp. Lu 2:24). Although older pigeons will eat anything, the young remain acceptable.

**Pilate**- The representative of all Gentiles in the trial and crucifixion of the Son of God.

**Pillar**- A kind or irregular column round an insulate, but deviating from the proportions of a just column. Pillars are either too massive or too slender for regular architecture; they are not restricted to any rules, and their parts and proportions are arbitrary. A square pillar is a massive work, called also a pier or piedroit, serving to support arches. This word is used, symbolically, for more than one thing in "the word of God".

**Pilgrim**- A wanderer; a traveler; particularly, one that travels to a distance from his own country to visit a holy place, or to pay his devotion to the remains of dead saints. In Scripture, one that has only a temporary residence on earth. Heb.11.

**Pinnacle**- A turret, or part of a building elevated above the main building.

**Piped**- Playing music on a pipe instrument.

**Pit**- A hole in the ground (Ex 21:33- 34), a cistern for water (Ge 37:24; Jer 14:3), a vault (Jer 41:9), a grave (Ps 30:3). It is used as a figure for mischief (Ps 9:15), and is the name given to the unseen place of woe (Re 20:1,3).

**Pitcher**- A vessel for containing liquids. In the East pitchers were usually carried on the head or shoulders (Ge 24:15- 20; Jg 7:16,19; Mr 14:13).

**Pity**- The feeling or suffering of one person, excited by the distresses of another; sympathy with the grief or misery of another; compassion or fellow- suffering.

**Pitiful**- Full of pity; tender; compassionate; having a heart to feel sorrow and sympathy for the distressed. James 5. 1 Pet.3.

**Plague**- A "stroke" of affliction, or disease. Sent as a divine chastisement (Nu 11:33; 14:37; 16:46- 49; 2Sa 24:21).

**Plain**- Levelness; evenness or surface. Want of ornament; want of artificial show.

**Plant**- A vegetable; an organic body, destitute of sense and spontaneous motion, adhering to another body in such a manner as to draw from it its nourishment, and having the power of propagating itself by seeds; "whose seed is in itself." Gen.1.

**Planted**- Set in the earth for propagation; set; fixed; introduced; established.

**Platter**- A large shallow dish for holding the provisions of a table.

**Please**- To excite agreeable sensations or emotions in; to gratify; as, to please the taste; to please the mind.

**Pleasure**- The gratification of the senses or of the mind; agreeable sensations or emotions; the excitement, relish or happiness produced by enjoyment or the expectation of good; opposed to pain.

**Plenty**- Abundance; copiousness; full or adequate supply; as, we have a plenty of corn for bread; the garrison has a plenty of provisions.

**Plough / Plow**- In agriculture, an instrument for turning up, breaking and preparing the ground for receiving the seed. It is drawn by oxen or horses and saves the labor of digging; it is therefore the most useful instrument in agriculture.

**Pluck**- o pull with sudden force or effort, or to pull off, out or from, with a twitch. Thus we say, to pluck feathers from a fowl; to pluck hair or wool from a skin; to pluck grapes or other fruit.

**Poison**- Any thing infectious, malignant, or noxious to health; as the poison of pestilential diseases. The poison of serpents and of asps is used in scripture symbolically for the judgement of God and for the malignity inherent in the wicked. De 32:24,33; Job 6:4; 20:16; Ps 58:4; 140:3; Ro 3:13. The tongue is "an unruly evil, full of deadly poison." Jas 3:8. Job 6:4 apparently alludes to arrows being poisoned.

**Pollute**- to make foul or unclean; in a general sense. But appropriately, among the Jews, to make unclean or impure, in a legal or ceremonial sense, so as to disqualify a person for sacred services, or to render things unfit for sacred uses. Num.18. Ex.20. 2 Kings 23. 2 Chron.36.

**Pool**- A pond, or reservoir, for holding water, an artificial cistern or tank.

**Poor**- In law, so destitute of property as to be entitled to maintenance from the public. The Mosaic Law has provisions for providing for the poor which came mainly from those people who were most able to make such provisions.

**Porch**- Strictly a vestibule, was probably a sort of veranda chamber in the works of Solomon, open in front and at the sides, but capable of being enclosed with awnings or curtains.

**Porter**- A gate- keeper, from the Latin portarius, the man who attended to the porta or gate.

**Portion**- To divide; to parcel; to allot a share or shares.

**Possible**- That may be or exist; that may be now, or may happen or come to pass; that may be done; not contrary to the nature of things.

**Possess**- To have the just and legal title, ownership or property of a thing; to own; to hold the title of, as the rightful proprietor, or to hold both the title and the thing.

**Possession**- The having, holding or detention of property in one's power or command; actual seizure or occupancy, either rightful or wrongful. One man may have the possession of a thing, and another may have the right of possession or property.

**Poverty**- Destitution of property; indigence; want of convenient means of subsistence. The consequence of poverty is dependence.

**Potter**- One who makes things from clay. Of the potter scripture says he treadeth the clay to make it pliable, Isa 41:25; and he forms his vessel on a wheel. Jer 18:3. Much of the ordinary pottery in the East is made in a very simple way: the workman turns the wheel with his feet, and with his hands he forms the vessel as it pleases him. This common pottery of the East is very fragile, and as such is often alluded to in scripture.

**Pound**- A standard weight consisting of 100 shekels (1Ki 10:17; Ezr 2:69; Ne 7:71- 72). Gr. litra, equal to about 12 oz. avoirdupois (Joh 12:3; 19:39). It is also used for money which weighed that amount.

**Pour**- to throw, as a fluid in a stream, either out of a vessel, or into it; as, to pour water from a pail, or out of a pail; to pour wine into a decanter.

**Powder**- Any dry substance composed of minute particles, whether natural or artificial; more generally, a substance comminuted or triturated to fine particles.

**Power**- The primary sense of the verb is to strain, to exert force. 1. In a philosophical sense, the faculty of doing or performing any thing; the faculty of moving or of producing a change in something; ability or strength.

**Power of God**- This is displayed when what is physically impossible is still done in this physical reality and causes men to praise the God of the universe. Devils can also do miracles, if God allows them to do so. However, the displays from devils do not cause men to praise the God of the universe.

**Praise**- Commendation bestowed on a person for his personal virtues or worthy actions, on meritorious actions themselves, or on anything valuable; approbation expressed in words or song. True praise recognizes what a

being has actually done or their personal character. False praise attributes to them what is not theirs to possess.

**Praise the Lord**- True recognition of the power and character of the most powerful Being in all of existence. In particular, this is recognition of His never- changing character and His never- changing laws.

**Prating**- Talking much on a trifling subject; talking idly, often for malicious purposes.

**Pray**- In a general sense, the act of asking for a favor, and particularly with earnestness. In worship, a solemn address to the Supreme Being, consisting of adoration, or an expression of our sense of God's glorious perfections, confession of our sins, supplication for mercy and forgiveness, intercession for blessings on others, and thanksgiving, or an expression of gratitude to God for his mercies and benefits.

**Preach**- To pronounce a public discourse on a religious subject, or from a subject, or from a text of Scripture. True preaching is telling people what "the word of God" says, not what their religion says, and encourages them to obey.

**Preacher**- One who preaches.

**Precepts**- A general concept of right and wrong that never changes for any reason or circumstance, but which also has many applications with the particular application changing depending upon circumstances.

**Precious**- Of great value or worth; very valuable.

**Precious Stones**- Frequently referred to (1Ki 10:2; 2Ch 3:6; 9:10; Re 18:16; 21:19). There are about twenty different names of such stones in the Bible. They are figuratively introduced to denote value, beauty, durability (Song 5:14; Isa 54:11- 12; La 4:7).

**Predestine**- There is much doctrinal error taught about this word. Pre is a Greek prefix meaning 'before'. A destination is where you plan to end a trip. "Predestination" is where God plans for people to end their life before their life starts. "(God) will have all men to be saved, and to come unto the knowledge of the truth" (2Timothy 2:4). Please also see the definition of elect.

**Preeminence**- Superiority, especially in noble or excellent qualities. The word stands for "what is over and above," "excellence".

**Prefer**- To advance, as to an office or dignity; to raise; to exalt; as, to prefer one to a bishopric; to prefer an officer to the rank of general.

**Prepare-** To make fit, adapt or qualify for a particular purpose, end, use, service or state, by any means whatever.

**Preparation-** The results of someone preparing something.

**Preposition-** A type of word used by "the word of God" to define your relationship with God. Please see the Doctrinal Study called: Relational Prepositions at [ljc1611kjv.com](http://ljc1611kjv.com) for more details.

**Presence-** The existence of a person or thing in a certain place; opposed to absence.

**Present-** Being in a certain place; opposed to absent. 2. Being before the face or near; being in company. Inquire of some of the gentlemen present.

**Preserved-** Kept the same without any change allowed.

**Press-** To urge with force or weight; a word of extensive use, denoting the application of any power, physical or moral, to something that is to be moved or affected.

**Presume-** To take suppose something to be true or entitled to belief, without examination or positive proof, or on the strength of probability.

**Pretense / Pretence-** A holding out or offering to others something false or feigned; a presenting to others, either in words or actions, a false or hypocritical appearance, usually with a view to conceal what is real, and thus to deceive.

**Prevail-** To overcome; to gain the victory or superiority; to gain the advantage.

**Prevent-** This word is composed of two parts, 'pre' and 'vent'. It means to exit before something happens. It is also used for keeping something from happening because the cause of the event is eliminated before it causes the result.

**Price-** The sum or amount of money at which a thing is valued, or the value which a seller sets on his goods in market. A man often sets a price on goods which he cannot obtain, and often takes less than the price set.

**Prick-** Pierced with a sharp point; spurred; goaded; stung with pain; rendered acid or pungent; marked; designated.

**Pride-** Inordinate self- esteem; an unreasonable conceit of one's own superiority in talents, beauty, wealth, accomplishments, rank or elevation in office, which manifests itself in lofty airs, distance, reserve, and often in

contempt of others. This was the sin which caused Satan to be kicked out of Heaven and is why he will, eventually, spend everlasting in "the lake of fire".

**Priest-** One who represents men before God. Only God can give this position to a man. Men, and women, claim to have this position but they truly represent men before devils.

**Prince-** One of the highest levels of rulers but not the very highest level. Often, but not always, a descendent of a king. There are many applications of this word in "the word of God".

**Principles-** In a general sense, the cause, source or origin of anything; that from which a thing proceeds; as the principle of motion; the principles of action.

**Principality-** An area ruled by a prince.

**Print-** In general, to take or form letters, characters or figures on paper, cloth or other material by impression. Thus, letters are taken on paper by impressing it on types blackened with ink.

**Prison-** In a general sense, any place of confinement or involuntary restraint; but appropriately, a public building for the confinement or safe custody of debtors and criminals committed by process of law; a jail. Originally, a prison, as Lord Coke observes, was only a place of safe custody; but it is now employed as a place of punishment. We have state- prisons, for the confinement of criminals by way of punishment.

**Prisoner-** One who is kept in a prison.

**Privately-** In a secret manner; not openly or publicly.

**Privily-** Privately; secretly. -- False teachers among you, who shall privily bring in damnable heresies. 2 Pet.2.

**Privy-** Private; pertaining to some person exclusively; assigned to private uses; not public. Secret; clandestine; not open or public; as a privy attempt to kill one.

**Proceed-** To move, pass or go forward from one place to another; applied to persons or things.

**Proclaim-** To promulgate; to announce; to publish; as, to proclaim a fast; to proclaim a feast. Lev.23. 1 Kings 21. He hath sent me to proclaim liberty to the captives. Is.61.

**Profane-** Irreverent to anything sacred; applied to persons. A man is profane when he takes the name of God in vain, or treats sacred things with abuse and irreverence.

**Profess**- To make open declaration of; to avow or acknowledge. Let no man who professes himself a Christian, keep so heathenish a family as not to see God by daily worshipped in it.

**Profession**- Open declaration; public avowal or acknowledgment of one's sentiments or belief; as professions of friendship or sincerity; a profession of faith or religion. There were probably 20,000 saved people before "the word of God" called anyone a "Christian" because the saved people's lives did not display the influence of "Christ".

**Profit**- literally to proceed forward, to advance. In commerce, the advance in the price of goods sold beyond the cost of purchase.

**Promise**- a declaration, written or verbal, made by one person to another, which binds the person who makes it, either in honor, conscience or law, to do or forbear a certain act specified; a declaration which gives to the person to whom it is made, a right to expect or to claim the performance or forbearance of the act. Please see the [Promises](#) Section, of the [Significant Gospel Events](#) and [Significant New Testament Events](#) Studies, at [ljc1611kjv.com1kjv.com](http://ljc1611kjv.com1kjv.com), for references to promises made by God.

**Prophecy / Prophecy**- The world claims that this word means a foretelling; prediction; a declaration of something to come. True Biblical prophecy is telling the Law of God when religious doctrine took people away from the truth.

**Prophet**- One who prophesies. Please see the prior note for how to separate true prophets of God from devil motivated liars. In addition to the prior, anyone who claims to tell exactly how an unfulfilled prophecy will be fulfilled, or when, is proven to be a liar because God always hides critical details, and when, until after he fulfills a prophecy.

**Propitiation**- The act of appeasing wrath and conciliating the favor of an offended person; the act of making propitious. 2. In theology, the atonement or atoning sacrifice offered to God to assuage his wrath and render him propitious to sinners. Christ is the propitiation for the sins of men. Rom.3.

**Proper**- Peculiar, naturally or essentially belonging to a person or thing; not common. That is not proper, which is common to many. Every animal has his proper instincts and inclinations, appetites and habits. Every muscle and vessel of the body has its proper office.

**Proselyte**- The name given to any from among the nations who embraced Judaism. Ac 2:10; 6:5; 13:43

**Prosper**- Having success; favored.

**Protest**- To affirm with solemnity; to make a solemn declaration of a fact or opinion; as, I protest to you, I have no knowledge of the transaction.

**Proud**- Having inordinate self- esteem; possessing a high or unreasonable conceit of one's own excellence, either of body or mind. A man may be proud of his person, of his talents, of his accomplishments or of his achievements.

**Prove**- Use never- changing rules to show the truth of a claim and eliminate any possibility of an alternate claim. Many people confuse the definition of persuade with this word. Please see the Study called: [Prove](#) at [ljc1611kjv.com1kjv.com](http://ljc1611kjv.com1kjv.com), for more on this word.

**Proverb**- A similitude; a parable. The Hebrew word thus rendered (mashal) has a wide signification. It comes from a root meaning "to be like," "parable." Rendered "proverb" in Isa 14:4; Hab 2:6; "dark saying" in Ps 49:4; Nu 12:8.

**Provide**- literally to see before; pro and video, to see. 1. To procure beforehand; to get, collect or make ready for future use; to prepare.

**Province**- A country of considerable extent, which being reduced under their dominion, was new- modeled, subjected to the command of an annual governor sent from Rome, and to such taxes and contributions as the Romans saw fit to impose.

**Provoke**- To call into action; to arouse; to excite; as, to provoke anger or wrath by offensive words or by injury.

**Prudence**- Prudence implies caution in deliberating and consulting on the most suitable means to accomplish valuable purposes, and the exercise of sagacity in discerning and selecting them. Prudence differs from wisdom in this, that prudence implies more caution and reserve than wisdom, or is exercised more in foreseeing and avoiding evil, than in devising and executing that which is good. It is sometimes mere caution or circumspection. Prudence is principally in reference to actions to be done, and due means, order, season and method of doing or not doing.

**Prudent**- Cautious; circumspect; practically wise; careful of the consequences of enterprises, measures or actions; cautious not to act when the end is of doubtful utility, or probably impracticable.



**Publican**- Tax collector for the Roman Government. This word was also used symbolically, by Jews, for a very vile and corrupt person.

**Public / Publick**- Pertaining to a nation, state or community; extending to a whole people; as a public law, which binds the people of a nation or state, as opposed to a private statute or resolve, which respects an individual or a corporation only. Thus we say, public welfare, public good, public calamity, public service, public property.

**Publish**- To make known to mankind or to people in general what before was private or unknown; to divulge, as a private transaction; to promulgate or proclaim, as a law or edict. We publish a secret, by telling it to people without reserve.

**Puffed**- full of pride.

**Punish**- To pain; to afflict with pain, loss or calamity for a crime or fault; primarily, to afflict with bodily pain, as to punish a thief with pillory or stripes; but the word is applied also to affliction by loss of property, by transportation, banishment, seclusion from society, &c. The laws require murderers to be punished with death. Other offenders are to be punished with fines, imprisonment, hard labor, etc. God punishes men for their sins with calamities personal and national.

**Punishment**- - Any pain or suffering inflicted on a person for a crime or offense, by the authority to which the offender is subject, either by the constitution of God or of civil society.

**Purchase**- To pursue to the end or object, and hence to obtain. In law, the act of obtaining or acquiring the title to lands and tenements by money, deed, gift or any means, except by descent; the acquisition of lands and tenements by a man's own act or agreement.

**Pure**- 100% of a single item. Separate from all heterogeneous or extraneous matter; clear; free from mixture; as pure water; pure clay; pure sand; pure air; pure silver of gold. Spiritually pure is 100% matching what God is and God says.

**Purify**- To cleanse, remove things that are not 100% of the base item. To purify spiritually is to remove anything which offends God.

**Purification**- the process by which a person unclean, according to the Levitical law, and thereby cut off from the sanctuary and the festivals, was restored to the enjoyment of all these privileges.

**Purge**- To cleanse or purify by separating and carrying off whatever is impure, heterogeneous, foreign or superfluous; as, to purge the body by evacuation.

**Purse**- A container for money such as a money- belt.

**Purple**- A color often mentioned with blue and scarlet in connection with the tabernacle. Ex 25:4, etc. Often used as the color of royalty.

**Purpose**- That which a person sets before himself as an object to be reached or accomplished; the end or aim to which the view is directed in any plan, measure or exertion.

**Put Away**- Completely and permanently separate from.

**Put Off**- Saved people are told to remove all influences of their former sinful nature ("the old man").

**Put on Christ**- Saved people are told to take on the character of "Christ" ("put on the new man") and let the world see Christ in the life that you live before them.

Q

**Quake**- To shake; to tremble; to be agitated with quick but short motions continually repeated; to shudder. Thus we say, a person quakes with fear or terror, or with cold. Heb. 12.

**Quarter**- One part out of four.

**Quarrel**- A dispute; a contest, a brawl; a petty fight or scuffle; from its noise and uproar.

**Queen**- A female ruler who is equivalent to a king or married to a king.

**Quench**- To extinguish; to put out; as, to quench flame.

**Question**- The act of asking; an interrogatory; as, to examine by question and answer.

**QUICK**- Spiritual life.

**Quicken**- To made spiritually alive.

**Quickly**- Speedily; with haste or celerity; soon; without delay.

**Quiet**- Still; free from alarm or disturbance; unmolested; as a quiet life.

# R

**Rabbi-** Spiritual teacher. The Jews had words for four levels of spiritual teachers, 'Rab', 'Rabbi', 'Rabban', and 'Rabboni'.

**Rage-** Violent anger accompanied with furious words, gestures or agitation; anger excited to fury. Passion sometimes rises to rage.

**Raging-** Acting with violence or fury; furious; impetuous; vehemently driven or agitated; as the raging sea or tempest.

**Rail-** To utter reproaches; to scoff; to use insolent and reproachful language; to reproach or censure in opprobrious terms.

**Raiment-** Clothing in general; vestments; vesture; garments. Gen. 24. Deut. 8.

**Rain-** To fall in drops from the clouds, as water; used mostly with it for a nominative; as, it rains; it will rain; it rained, or it has rained. "The early rain" means the first autumnal showers which prepare the arid soil for the seed; "the latter rain" the later spring showers, especially in March, which bring forward the crop toward harvest (Jas 5:7; Pr 16:15).

**Rainbow-** The 'bow set in the clouds' was given by God to Noah as a token that He would not again destroy the world by a flood. Ge 9:13- 16. That the rainbow, as is now known, is caused by the refraction of light on drops of rain, need not cause any difficulty. The rainbow is mentioned in Re 4:3; 10:1, as a symbol that, notwithstanding all the sin of man, God has been faithful to His promise respecting the earth. The beautiful bow in the cloud should ever call to mind His abiding faithfulness.

**Raise-** To lift; to take up; to heave; to lift from a low or reclining posture; as, to raise a stone or weight; to raise the body in bed. In "the word of God", it is most often used for resurrection.

**Rama / Ramah-** This is the name of several places in the holy land. One of the cities of the allotment of Benjamin. It is associated with the prophecy that all of the children who were two years old, or younger, would be murdered by the king as he tried to murder the child Jesus.

**Rank-** The order of an army, or other groups, which are in straight lines.

**Ransom-** The price or payment made for our redemption, as when it is said that the Son of man "gave his life a ransom for many" (Mt 20:28; comp. Ac 20:28; Ro 3:23- 24; 1Co 6:19- 20; Ga 3:13; 4:4- 5; Eph 1:7; Col 1:14; 1Ti 2:6; Tit 2:14; 1Pe 1:18- 19).

**Rather-** More readily or willingly; with better liking; with preference or choice.

**Raven-** a black bird including the crow. Not allowed as food (Le 11:15).

**Ravening-** Preying with rapacity; voraciously devouring; as a ravening wolf.

**Reach-** To extend to; to touch by extending either the arm alone, or with an instrument in the hand; as, to reach a book on the shelf.

**Read-** Getting the meaning of what was written into the mind. This can be done orally or silently.

**Readiness / Ready-** The primary sense is prepared to go, move, or advance forward.

**Reap-** To cut grain with a sickle; as, to reap wheat or rye. Used also for receiving the results of pasty actions.

**Rear-** To bring up or to raise to maturity, as young; as, to rear a numerous offspring.

**Reason-** That which is thought or which is alleged in words, as the ground or cause of opinion, conclusion or determination.

**Reasonable-** Able to give a valid reason for what is claimed and also to able to change what is believed when a more valid reason is presented. Someone who rejects a valid reason and clings to an invalid belief is an unreasonable fanatic.

**Rebuke-** To chide, to reprove, to reprehend for a fault correct them.

**Receipt-** The place where taxes were received, custom house.

**Receive-** To take. In order to truly receive a person, we must receive their character as our own. In order to truly receive "Jesus", we must take His character as our own. Couples who have truly received each other become like each other.

**Reckon-** To count; to number; that is, to tell the particulars.

**Reconcile-** To conciliate anew; to call back into union and friendship the affections which have been alienated; to restore to friendship or favor after estrangement; as, to reconcile men or parties that have been at variance. Our "Lord Jesus Christ" reconciles the saved to God.

**Recompence / Recompense-** Punishment for evil, reward. We are to leave this to God and trust Him to do what is right.

**Record-** To register; to enroll; to write or enter in a book or on parchment, for the purpose of preserving authentic or correct evidence of a thing; as, to record the proceedings of a court; to record a deed or lease; to record historical events.

**Recover-** to regain; to get or obtain that which was lost; as, to recover stolen goods; to recover a town or territory which an enemy had taken; to recover sight or senses; to recover health or strength after sickness.

**Red-** Of a bright color, resembling blood. Red is a simple or primary color, but of several different shades or hues, as scarlet, crimson, vermilion, orange red, etc. Often used symbolically for blood or death.

**Red Sea-** The sea known to us as the Red Sea was by the Israelites called "the sea," Ex 14:2,9,16,21,28; 15:1,4,8,10,19; Jos 24:6-7 and many other passages, and specially "the sea of Suph." Ex 10:19; 13:18; 15:4,22; 23:31; Nu 14:25 etc. This word signifies a sea- weed resembling wool, and such sea- weed is thrown up abundantly on the shores of the Red Sea; hence Brugsch calls it the sea of reeds or weeds. The color of the water is not red. Ebers says that it is of a lovely blue- green color, and named Red either from its red banks or from the Erythraeans, who were called the red people.

**Redeem-** To purchase back; to ransom; to liberate or rescue from captivity or bondage, or from any obligation or liability to suffer or to be forfeited, by paying an equivalent.

**Reed-** green herbage growing in marshy places. Also called a "cane," a generic name for a reed of any kind.

**Reform-** formed again to live like God originally intended.

**Refrain-** To hold back; to restrain; to keep from action. My son - refrain thy foot from their path.

**Refresh-** To cool; to allay heat. A dew coming after a heat refresheth. 2. To give new strength to; to invigorate; to relieve after fatigue; as, to refresh the body.

**Refuse-** To deny a request, demand, invitation or command; to decline to do or grant what is solicited, claimed or commanded.

**Regard-** To give something special significance or value.

**Regeneration-** Remake a person from the lowest level (gene) up. He makes the truly saved a new creature by the "Holy Ghost".

**Region-** A tract of land or space of indefinite extent, usually a tract of considerable extent. It is sometimes nearly synonymous with country; as all the region of Argob. Deut. 3.

**Reign-** To possess or exercise sovereign power or authority; to rule; to exercise government, as a king or emperor; or to hold the supreme power. George the third reigned over Great Britain more than fifty years.

**Reins-** The means of control. The word comes from the kidneys, which were supposed to be the seat of the desires and affections. Also used metaphorically for "heart." The "reins" and the "heart" are often mentioned together, as denoting the whole moral constitution of man (Ps 7:9; 16:7; 26:2; 139:13; Jer 17:10, etc.

**Reject-** To throw away, as anything useless or vile. To cast off.

**Rejoice-** To have joy again. 'To experience joy and gladness in a high degree; to be exhilarated with lively and pleasurable sensations; to exult.

**Rehearse-** To recite; to repeat the words of a passage or composition; to repeat the words of another. When the words were heard which David spoke, they rehearsed them before Saul. 1Sam. 17.

**Release-** To set free from restraint of any kind, either physical or moral; to liberate from prison, confinement or servitude. Matt. 15. Mark 15.

**Relieve-** To free, wholly or partially, from pain, grief, want, anxiety, care, toil, trouble, burden, oppression or anything that is considered to be an evil; to ease of anything that pains the body or distresses the mind.

**Religious / Religion-** Religion, in its most comprehensive sense, includes a belief in the being and perfections of God, in the revelation of his will to man, in man's obligation to obey his commands, in a state of reward and punishment, and in man's accountability to God; and also true godliness or piety of life, with the practice of all moral duties. It therefore comprehends theology, as a system of doctrines or principles, as well as

practical piety; for the practice of moral duties without a belief in a divine lawgiver, and without reference to his will or commands, is not religion.

**Religious Part of Mosaic Law**- The Mosaic Law had three areas that it dealt with, the Civil Law, the Religious law and the Moral Law. The Moral law dealt with how we are to deal with God and everything in it was established before the Mosaic Law. It is still in effect today. The Civil law dealt with how the government was to rule the people and even the Israel of today does not follow it. We are commanded to obey the government of where we live. The Religious Law dealt with their religious practices in this world. It contained the sacrifices, the feast days and the Sabbath. According to Hebrews, our "Lord Jesus Christ", as "Lord of Sabbath", replaced it with our ongoing personal relationship with Him. People who try to force us to worship on Saturday are rejecting the New Testament.

**Remain**- To continue; to rest or abide in a place for a time indefinite. They remained a month in Rome.

**Remaineth**- The action of remains as a lifestyle which repeats to keep on keeping on as opposed to a one- time action.

**Remember**- To have in the mind an idea which had been in the mind before, and which recurs to the mind without effort.

**Remembrance**- Something used to help us remember such as the "Lord's Supper" is to help us remember what our "Lord Jesus Christ" did to save us and to remember His promises for the future.

**Remiss**- Slack; dilatory; negligent; not performing duty or business; not complying with engagements at all, or not in due time; as to be remiss in attendance on official duties; remiss in payment of debts.

**Remission**- not making us suffer the just punishment for our sins.

**Remnant**- Residue; that which is left after the separation, removal or destruction of a part. The remnant that are left of the captivity. Neh. 1.

**Remove**- Changed in place; carried to a distance; displaced from office; placed far off.

**Rend**- Torn asunder; split or burst by violence.

**Rent**- Past- tense form of rend.

**Render**- Give all that is owed.

**Renew**- Made new again; repaired; re- established; repeated; revived; renovated; regenerated.

**Repay**- To pay back; to refund; as, to repay money borrowed or advanced.

**Repentance**- There is a lot of doctrinal error taught about this word. It is turning from sin and towards obedience to God. People who turn to obeying religious rules have not truly Biblically repented.

**Report**- To bear or bring back an answer, or to relate what has been discovered by a person sent to examine, explore or investigate; as, a messenger reports to his employer what he has seen or ascertained.

**Reproach**- To censure in terms of opprobrium or contempt.

**Reprobate**- Not enduring proof or trial; not of standard purity or fineness; disallowed; rejected. (Jer. 6). Abandoned in sin; lost to virtue or grace. (Titus 1:16). Abandoned to error, or in apostasy. (2Ti 3:8).

**Reproof**- Blame expressed to the face; censure for a fault; reprehension. Telling someone they have disobeyed God.

**Reprove**- Tell them when they're doing wrong, to blame, to censure.

**Reputation**- Good name; the credit, honor or character which is derived from a favorable public opinion or esteem. Reputation is a valuable species of property or right, which should never be violated. With the loss of reputation, a man and especially a woman, loses most of the enjoyments of life.

**Require**- To demand; to ask, as of right and by authority. We require a person to do a thing, and we require a thing to be done.

**Requite**- To repay either good or evil; in a good sense, to recompense; to return an equivalent in good; to reward. I also will requite you This kindness. 2Sam. 2. 1Tim. 5.

**Rescue**- To free or deliver from any confinement, violence, danger or evil; to liberate from actual restraint, or to remove or withdraw from a state of exposure to evil; as, to rescue a prisoner from an officer; to rescue seamen from destruction by shipwreck.

**Resemble**- To have the likeness of; to bear the similitude of something, either in form, figure or qualities.

**Reserve-** To keep in store for future or other use; to withhold from present use for another purpose.

**Residue-** That which remains after a part is taken, separated, removed or designated.

**Resist-** Literally, to stand against; to withstand; hence, to act in opposition, or to oppose. a dam or mound resists a current of water passively, by standing unmoved and interrupting its progress. An army resists the progress of an enemy actively, by encountering and defeating it. We resist measures by argument or remonstrance.

**Restitution-** Returning or restoring to a person some thing or right of which he has been unjustly deprived; as the restitution of ancient rights to the crown. The repairing of wrongs done, and the restoring of what one has wrongfully taken from another, are strictly enjoined in Scripture, and are a necessary evidence of true repentance, Ex 22:1- 15; Ne 5:1- 13; Lu 19:8.

**Restrain-** To hold back; to check; to hold from action, proceeding or advancing, either by physical or moral force, or by an interposing obstacle.

**Restore-** To return to a person, as a specific thing which he has lost, or which has been taken from him and unjustly detained.

**Resolve-** Determine in purpose.

**Resort-** To have recourse; to apply; to betake. The king thought it time to resort to other counsels.

**Respect-** To regard; to have regard to in design or purpose.

**Rest-** Cessation of motion or action of any kind, and applicable to anybody or being; as rest from labor; rest from mental exertion; rest of body or mind.

**Resurrection-** Bringing dead people back to life as opposed to a belief in reincarnation which says that the same spirit is given a new physical body in this physical reality. This is one of the cardinal facts and doctrines of the Gospel. If Christ be not risen, our faith is vain (1Co 15:14). In addition, there are times when this word is used for something being lifted higher physically, but even then the Bible reference often has a symbolic spiritual meaning in addition to the physical meaning.

**Resurrection of Christ-** This has a different doctrinal meaning than the Resurrection of Jesus. The Resurrection of Christ gives us all of the promises that are only given through our personal relationship which is "in Christ". (See the Study called: [Relational Prepositions](#), at

[ljc1611kjb.com](http://ljc1611kjb.com)1kjb.com, for more Bible references and doctrines related to this phrase.)

**Resurrection of Jesus-** This has a different doctrinal meaning than the Resurrection of Christ. The Resurrection of Jesus gives us the promise, from God, of a new resurrected body.

**Retain-** To hold or keep in possession; not to lose or part with or dismiss.

**Return-** To come or go back to the same place.

**Reveal-** To disclose; to discover; to show; to make known something before unknown or concealed; as, to reveal secrets.

**Revelation-** The act of disclosing or discovering to others what was before unknown to them; appropriately, the disclosure or communication of truth to men by God himself, or by his authorized agents, the prophets and apostles. How that by revelation he made known to me the mystery, as I wrote before in few words. Eph. 3. 2Cor. 12.

**Reveling / Revelling -** Feasting with noisy merriment; carousing with noisy merriment; revelry. Gal. 5. 1Peter 4. In Ga 5:21 it is classed with fornication, uncleanness, lasciviousness, etc., as one of the works of the flesh. In 1 Pet 4:3 it is spoken of the Gentiles and is classed with drunkenness and carousing and such like.

**Revenge-** See avenge and revenger. To inflict pain or injury in return for an injury received.

**Revenger-** The person who does revenge.

**Reverence-** Fear mingled with respect and esteem; veneration.

**Revile-** To reproach; to treat with opprobrious and contemptuous language. Blessed are ye when men shall revile you. Matt. 5.

**Revive-** To return to life; to recover life.

**Reward-** Recompense, or equivalent return for good done, for kindness, for services and the like.

**Riches-** Wealth; opulence; affluence; possessions of land, good or money in abundance. Riches do not consist in having more gold and silver, but in having more in proportion than our neighbors. The "word of God" makes a distinction between physical riches, which are temporary, and spiritual riches, which are everlasting.

**Right Hand of God**- This hand is used, symbolically, to represent God's power.

**Righteous / Righteousness**- This is another word which has a lot of doctrinal error taught about it. Righteousness is truly: doing the right thing at the right time and doing it the right way and for the right reason. Every one of those are requires and each is defined by "the word of God".

**Righteousness of the Law**- The religious Jews claimed that keeping their religious rules was keeping God's law, even though they added to God's law. In addition, they claimed that doing so made them righteous before God. The "word of God" explains that their claim was wrong and that only our "Lord Jesus Christ" can make anyone "righteous" before God.

**Rightly**- According to the divine will or moral rectitude; as duty rightly performed. According to truth or fact; not erroneously.

**Ring**- Used as "a signet" (Ge 38:18), worn on the hand, or suspended, by a cord from the neck. Pharaoh's transfer of his ring from his finger to Joseph betokened his investing him with royal authority.

**Rioting**- Reveling; indulging in excessive feasting and drunkenness.

**Ripe**- Brought to perfection in growth or to the best state; mature; fit for use; as ripe fruit; ripe corn.

**Rise**- To move to pass upward in any manner; to ascend; as, a fog rises from a river or from low ground; a fish rises in water; fowls rise in the air; clouds rise from the horizon towards the meridian; a balloon rises above the clouds. Also see risen for the spiritual application.

**Risen**- In the New Testament this word is only used for someone who has risen from the dead and has had physical life restored. The "word of God" does not call "Jesus" "Lord" until after he rose from the dead because he took back His power and authority as God while in Hell when He defeated all devils by Himself. He gave up His power and authority to be born, live and die as a literal human being. But, he will never give up that power and authority again.

**River**- A long passage of water. The three principal rivers referred to in scripture are the Nile, the Jordan, and the Euphrates.

**Roar**- o cry with a full, loud, continued sound; to bellow, as a beast; as a roaring bull; a roaring lion.

**Rob / Robbery**- In law, the forcible and felonious taking from the person of another any money or goods, putting him in fear, that is, by violence or by menaces of death or personal injury. Robbery differs from theft, as it is a violent felonious taking from the person or presence of another; whereas theft is a felonious taking of goods privately from the person, dwelling, etc. of another.

**Robe**- A kind of gown or long loose garment worn over other dress, particularly by persons in elevated stations. The robe is properly a dress of state or dignity, as of princes, judges, priests, etc. See Ex. 29:55. 1Sam. 24:4. Matt. 27:28.

**rock (singular)**- A large mass of stony matter, usually compounded of two or more simple minerals, either bedded in the earth or resting on its surface. Sometimes rocks compose the principal part of huge mountains; sometimes hugh rocks lie on the surface of the earth, in detached blocks or masses.

**Rocks (plural)**- Same as the singular word but never used, symbolically, for "Christ".

**Rock is Christ**- Please see the note for John 1:42- LJC, at [ljc1611kjv.com1kjv.com](http://ljc1611kjv.com1kjv.com). for references and notes on every place where "the word of God" uses the word "rock" (singular). It uses the word "rock" only for a type of "Christ", including our ongoing personal relationship that is in "Christ", or a type of a devil trying to claim to be a god (an "antichrist") or for the religious attempt to replace our ongoing personal relationship that is in "Christ".

**Rod**- An offshoot from the trunk of a tree, Ge 30:37; Isa 11:1; Eze 37:15- 22. It also denotes a staff, used by one walking, Isa 3:1; Eze 29:6; by a diviner, Ho 4:12; by a surveyor, Ps 74:2; by a shepherd, Le 27:32; Zec 11:10- 14; as an instrument of correction, Pr 23:13; 29:15; as a sceptre, Es 8:4; Isa 14:5; and as a symbol of power, Ps 2:9, support and direction, Ps 23:4.

**Roll**- The common form of ancient books. The Hebrew word rendered "roll" or "volume" is meghillah, found in Eze 2:9; Ps 40:7; Jer 36:2,6,23,28- 29; Eze 2:9; 3:1- 3; Zec 5:1- 2.

**Rome**- the famous capital of the ancient world, is situated on the Tiber at a distance of about 15 miles from its mouth.

**Roof**- The cover or upper part of a house or other building, consisting of rafters covered with boards, shingles or tiles, with a side or sides sloping from the ridge, for the purpose of carrying off the water that falls in rain or snow.

**Room**- Often used for "a place at table" or "a place at the gathering", but also used for an enclosed space within a building.

**Root**- A root is a shoot, and only a different application of rod, L. radius. 1. That part of a plant which enters and fixes itself in the earth, and serves to support the plant in an erect position, while by means of its fibrils it imbibes nutriment for the stem, branches and fruit. The "word of God" uses this word, symbolically, for "Christ".

**Rough**- Having inequalities, small ridges or points on the surface; not smooth or plane; as a rough board, a rough stone; rough cloth.

**Royal**- Kingly; pertaining to a king; regal; as royal power or prerogative; a royal garden; royal domains; the royal family.

**Rudiments**- Plural of stoicheion (Ga 4:3,9; Col 2:8,20; Heb 5:12; 2Pe 3:10,12)): This word occurs 7 t in the New Testament, and the King James Version translates it in three different ways. In the two passages in Galatians, and in the two in 2 Peter, it is rendered "elements." In the two passages in Colossians, it is translated "rudiments." In He it is rendered "first principles."

**Ruin**- Destruction; fall; overthrow; defeat; that change of anything which destroys it, or entirely defeats its object, or unfits it for use; as the ruin of a house.

**Rule**- Government; sway; empire; control; supreme command or authority.

**Ruler**- One that governs, whether emperor, king, pope or governor; any one that exercises supreme power over others.

**Rumor / Rumour**- Flying or popular report; a current story passing from one person to another without any known authority for the truth of it.

**Run**- To move or pass in almost any manner, as on the feet or on wheels. Men and other animals run on their feet; carriages run on wheels, and wheels run on their axle-trees.

**Rush**- To move or drive forward with impetuosity, violence and tumultuous rapidity; as, armies rush to battle; waters rush down a precipice; winds rush through the forest.

**Rust**- Strictly speaking rust is the red oxide of iron formed by the corrosion of that metal, but by extension it has come to mean corrosion produced on any metal. It is also used for any disease which eats something like plants.

## S

**Sabbath**- This is another word with much doctrinal error taught about it. There are fifty (50) "high sabbaths" in addition to Saturday, which are ignored by religions which insist that we worship on Saturday. The "Lord of Sabbath" did away with Sabbath worship because of all the additional religious rules that the Jews added to "the word of God" for sabbath. It is part of the religious part of the Mosaic Law which was replaced by the New Testament. Please see the note for Matthew 12:8- LJC, at [ljc1611kjv.com1kjv.com](http://ljc1611kjv.com1kjv.com), for more details about "Jesus" being "Lord of Sabbath".

**Sacrifice**- To offer to God in homage or worship, by killing and consuming, as victims on an altar; to immolate, either as an atonement for sin, or to procure favor, or to express thankfulness; as, to sacrifice an ox or a lamb. 2Sam. 6.

**Sacrilege**- To take or steal. The crime of violating or profaning sacred things; or the alienating to laymen or to common purposes what has been appropriated or consecrated to religious persons or uses.

**Sackcloth**- Cloth made of black goats' hair, coarse, rough, and thick, used for sacks, and also worn by mourners (Ge 37:34; 42:25; 2Sa 3:31; Es 4:1- 2; Ps 30:11, etc.), and as a sign of repentance (Mt 11:21). It was put upon animals by the people of Nineveh (Jon 3:8).

**Sad**- Sorrowful; affected with grief; cast down with affliction.

**Sadducees**- A religious party or school among the Jews at the time of Christ, who denied that the oral law was a revelation of God to the Israelites. and who deemed the written law alone to be obligatory on the nation, as of divine authority.

**Safe**- Free from danger of any kind; as safe from enemies; safe from disease; safe from storms; safe from the malice of foes.

**Sail**- Both the means and result of using wind to power a watercraft.

**Saint**- A fully spiritually mature saved person. Please see the Study called: [What is Your Level of Spiritual Maturity?](#) At [ljc1611kjv.com1kjv.com](http://ljc1611kjv.com1kjv.com) for the different words which "the word of God" uses to describe levels of spiritual maturity.

**Saith**- A lifestyle saying that you are to 'keep on keeping on doing.

**Sake**- Final cause; end; purpose; or rather the purpose of obtaining. I open a window for the sake of air, that is, to obtain it, for the purpose of obtaining air. I read for the sake of instruction, that is, to obtain it.

**sake, for His**- The saved are called to do everything in their life to live up the name of our "Lord Jesus Christ".

**Salt**- A mineral that is necessary for all forms of animal life. It is used to season and to preserve foods and to repair corruption and disease. It is also used, symbolically, for how God's people are to do the same, spiritually, in society.

**Salute / Salutation**- A favorable greeting. "God be gracious unto thee," "the Lord bless thee," etc. (Ge 43:29; Ru 2:4; 3:10; 1Sa 15:13; Ps 129:8).

**Salvation**- God's life in us. This word is used for being spiritually excluded from the damnation which we each earned by our sin. There is much about this subject at [ljc1611kjv.com1kjv.com](http://ljc1611kjv.com1kjv.com).

**Salvation Through Sanctification**- True Biblical salvation is God's life in us and all life continues to grow. Part of true Biblical salvation is ongoing spiritual growth which is obtained through true Biblical sanctification. (The "word of God" literally says: "salvation through sanctification".)

**Samaria**- THE DISTRICT OF SAMARIA is often alluded to in the N.T. It occupied about the same territory as that of Ephraim and Manasseh's portion in the west. It had the district of Galilee on the north, and Judaea on the south. Lu 17:11; Joh 4:4; Ac 1:8; 8:1- 14; 9:31; 15:3.

**Samaritan**- The name given to the new and mixed inhabitants whom Esarhaddon (B.C. 677), the king of Assyria, brought from Babylon and other places and settled in the cities of Samaria, instead of the original inhabitants whom Sargon (B.C. 721) had removed into captivity (2Ki 17:24; comp. Ezr 4:2,9- 10).

**Sanctified**- set aside for Gods use.

**Sanctuary**- A sacred place; particularly among the Israelites, the most retired part of the temple at Jerusalem, called the Holy of Holies, in which was kept the ark of the covenant, and into which no person was permitted to enter except the high priest, and that only once a year to intercede for the people. The same name was given to the most sacred part of the tabernacle. Leviticus 4.

**Sand**- Any mass or collection of fine particles of stone, particularly of fine particles of silicious stone, but not strictly reduced to powder or dust.

**Sang / Sung**- Past- tense forms of the word sing.

**Sanhedrin**- The assembly of Jewish elders and priests.

**Sardine / Sardius**- A precious stone. One of this kind was set in Aaron's breastplate. Ex. 28.

**Sarah**- Wife of Abraham. Godly example for all wives.

**Satan**- Our primary spiritual enemy and the head of all devils. He started out as a high angel (possibly the highest) but was kicked out of heaven, by God, when he had pride in his heart.

**Save Your Soul**- Our "soul" is: the way you think, the way that you react emotionally to the circumstances of life and how you make decisions of the will; all long term. "Jesus" did not sacrifice His life just to give us a way into Heaven. True spiritual salvation includes changing our "soul" to become like God.

**Seek**- keep on looking until you find.

**Saviour**- The spiritual parent of all saved people. The "word of God" tells us that our Saviour is: God the Father, God the Holy Ghost, God the Son as Jesus, God the Son as Christ and God the Son as Lord.

**Savor / Savour**- A taste or odor; as the savor of an orange or rose; an ill savor; a sweet savor. God commands His people to make sacrifices and live lives which are "a sweet savour" to God.

**Sayings (plural)**- Expressions; several sentences uttered to make one or more declarations.

**Scapegoat**- Part of the sacrifice described in Leviticus. This was one of two goats and it was allowed to escape into the wilderness. This is a prophecy for how the Jews would treat Jesus when they crucified Him outside of Jerusalem.

**Scarcely**- Hardly; scantily; with difficulty.

**Scarlet**- A shade of the color red.

**Scatter**- To disperse; to dissipate; to separate or remove things to a distance from each other.

**Sceptre**- As a symbol of authority, the use of the sceptre originated in the idea that the ruler was as a shepherd of his people (Ge 49:10; Nu 24:17; Ps 45:6; Isa 14:5).



**Schoolmaster**- The man who presides over and teaches a school; a teacher, instructor or preceptor of a school. In "the word of God", the Mosaic Law was to be a schoolmaster which was to bring God's people to a personal relationship that is "in Christ".

**Scorch**- To burn superficially; to subject to a degree of heat that changes the color of a thing, or both the color and texture of the surface.

**Scorn**- Extreme contempt; that disdain which springs from a person's opinion of the meanness of an object, and a consciousness or belief of his own superiority or worth.

**Scourge**- A form of punishment administered with a rod.

**Scribe**- A secretary. A subordinate class of scribes, most of whom were Levites. They were engaged in various ways as writers. Such, for example, was Baruch, who "wrote from the mouth of Jeremiah all the words of the Lord" (Jer 36:4,32).

**Scrip**- The Hebrew word thus translated appears in 1Sa 17:40 as a synonym for the bag in which the shepherds of Palestine carried their food or other necessities. The scrip of the Galilean peasants was of leather, used especially to carry their food on a journey, and slung over their shoulders.

**Scripture**- The books of the Old and New Testament; the Bible. The word is used either in the singular or plural number, to denote the sacred writings or divine oracles, called sacred or holy, as proceeding from God and containing sacred doctrines and precepts.

**Scroll**- probably formed from roll, or its root. A roll of paper or parchment; or a writing formed into a roll.

**Scorpion**- Scorpions are a species of spider. They are mentioned along with serpents (De 8:15). Used also figuratively to denote wicked persons (Eze 2:6; Lu 10:19); also a particular kind of scourge or whip (1Ki 12:11).

**Sea**- A large bason, cistern or laver which Solomon made in the temple, so large as to contain more than six thousand gallons. This was called the brazen sea, and used to hold water for the priests to wash themselves. 1 Kings 7. 2 Chron. 4. 2. A large body of water, nearly enclosed by land, as the Baltic or the Mediterranean; as the sea of Azof. Seas are properly branches of the ocean, and upon the same level.

**Sea of Tiberias**- In Joh 6:16, etc., we read "the disciples went by ship over the sea toward Capernaum (the same side as Tiberias), and the sea arose by reason of a great wind that blew"; then Jesus walked on the sea to

them, and "immediately the ship was at the land where they went."

**Seal**- A piece of metal or other hard substance, usually round or oval, on which is engraved some image or device, and sometimes a legend or inscription. This is used by individuals, corporate bodies and states, for making impressions on wax upon instruments of writing, as evidence of their authenticity.

**Search**- To look over or through for the purpose of finding something; to explore; to examine by inspection; as, to search the house for a book.

**Season**- A fit or suitable time; the convenient time; the usual or appointed time; as, the messenger arrived in season; in good season.

**Seat**- Denotes a place or thing upon which one sits, as a chair, or stool (1Sa 20:18; Jg 3:20). It is used also of the exalted position occupied by men of marked rank or influence, either in good or evil (Mt 23:2; Ps 1:1).

**Secret**- Properly, separate; hence, hid; concealed from the notice or knowledge of all persons except the individual or individuals concerned. Unseen; private; secluded; being in retirement.

**Sect**- "A chosen manner of life," and then "a religious party," as the "sect" of the Sadducees (Ac 5:17), of the Pharisees (Ac 15:5), the Nazarenes, i.e., Christians (Ac 24:5). It afterwards came to be used in a bad sense, of those holding pernicious error, divergent forms of belief (2Pe 2:1; Ga 5:20).

**Secure**- Free from danger of being taken by an enemy; that may resist assault or attack. The place is well fortified and very secure.

**Seditions**- The sense of this word is the contrary of that which is naturally deducible from sedo, or sedeo, denoting a rising or raging, rather than an appeasing. But to set is really to throw down, to drive, and sedition may be a setting or rushing together.

**Seduce**- To draw aside or entice from the path of rectitude and duty in any manner, by flattery, promises, bribes or otherwise; to tempt and lead to iniquity; to corrupt; to deprave.

**See**- A physical sense which conveys information about the physical world to the brain. This word is also used, symbolically, to convey information about the spiritual reality. When Paul wrote: "For now we see through a glass, darkly", he was saying that seeing spiritual truths were as hard to see as if you had a mirror with a dark backing.

**See the Son-** Symbolic language for 'learn the character of the Son of God'.

**Seed-** The substance, animal or vegetable, which nature prepares for the reproduction and conservation of the species. This word is used, symbolically, for the basis of new life. Thus, "the word of God" is equated to "seed" in the Parable of the Sower. Please see [ljc1611kjv.com1kjv.com](http://ljc1611kjv.com1kjv.com) for the explanation of that parable.

**Seek-** To go in search or quest of; to look for; to search for by going from place to place.

**Seize-** To fall or rush upon suddenly and lay hold on; or to gripe or grasp suddenly.

**Sell-** To transfer property or the exclusive right of possession to another for an equivalent in money. It is correlative to buy, as one party buys what the other sells.

**Senate-** A council of seventy senators among the Jews, usually with the addition of the high priest as president, who determined the most important affairs of the nation.

**Sensual-** The word is 'animal, sensuous,' in opposition to what is 'spiritual.' It is translated 'natural' in 1Co 2:14; 15:44,46. To be sensual is to be led by the passions of man's flesh: it is placed with 'earthly' and 'devilish' in Jas 3:15; and is contrasted with having the Holy Spirit in Jude 1:19.

**Sentence-** The written form of a single thought.

**Separate-** To disunite; to divide; to sever; to part, in almost any manner, either things naturally or casually joined. The parts of a solid substance may be separated by breaking, cutting or splitting, or by fusion, decomposition or natural dissolution.

**Sepulcher / Sepulchre-** This word was first used for the "cave of the field of Machpelah," where also Abraham and Rebekah and Jacob and Leah were buried (79:29- 32).

**Serjeants-** This was literally 'one who carried a rod:' an inferior Roman officer who attended the magistrates to execute their orders, otherwise called a LICTOR. Ac 16:35,38. They carried a bundle of rods, in the center of which was an axe.

**Serpent-** A type of snake. More than forty species are found in Syria and Arabia. This word is used symbolically of a deadly, subtle, malicious enemy (Lu 10:19).

**Servant-** To work for; to bestow the labor of body and mind in the employment of another. God uses devils but

does not call them His servants. All true servants of God are saved.

**Serve-** To work for; to bestow the labor of body and mind in the employment of another.

**Service-** In a general sense, labor of body or of body and mind, performed at the command of a superior, or the pursuance of duty, or for the benefit of another.

**Settle-** Placed; established; determined; composed; adjusted.

**Seven-** A number which is often used symbolically for 'finished'. Be careful with this symbolism. There is a famous message called Seven Sayings from the Cross when there are actually eight reported in the Gospels. That preacher deliberately perverted "the word of God" is order to force it to match the symbolism of the number 'seven'. NO symbolism is absolutely always applied in every reference of the Bible.

**Seventy-** Seven times ten. here is some speculation about the symbolic meaning of this number, but nothing conclusive.

**Sever-** To part or divide by violence; to separate by parting or rending; as, to sever the body or the arm at a single stroke.

**Shadow-** Shade within defined limits; obscurity or deprivation of light, apparent on a plane and representing the form of the body which intercepts the rays of light; as the shadow of a man, of a tree or a tower.

**Shake-** To cause to move with quick vibrations; to move rapidly one way and the other; to agitate; as, the wind shakes a tree; an earthquake shakes the hills or the earth.

**Shame-** A painful sensation excited by a consciousness of guilt, or of having done something which injures reputation; or by of that which nature or modesty prompts us to conceal. Shame is particularly excited by the disclosure of actions which, in the view of men, are mean and degrading.

**Sharp-** Having a very thin edge or a fine point; keen; acute; not blunt. Thus we may say, a sharp knife, or a sharp needle.

**Shear-** To cut or clip something from the surface with an instrument of two blades; to separate anything from the surface by shears, scissors or a like instrument; as, to shear sheep; to shear cloth.

**Shed**- To pour out; to effuse; to spill; to suffer to flow out; as, to shed tears; to shed blood.

**Shed Abroad**- To pour out; to effuse; to spill; to suffer to flow out beyond limits which is expected to limit the spread of what is shed.

**Sheep**- Identified as a domesticated animal which is often used symbolically for: 'sacrifice', 'God's people', 'the Son of God' and more.

**Shepherd**- A man employed in tending, feeding and guarding sheep in the pasture. The pastor of a parish, church or congregation; a minister of the gospel who superintends a church or parish, and gives instruction in spiritual things. God and Christ are in Scripture designated as Shepherds, as they lead, protect and govern their people, and provide for their welfare.

**Sheet**- A broad piece of cloth or paper.

**Shew**- The Biblical spelling for the word 'show'.

**Shewbread**- This bread consisted of twelve loaves made of the finest flour. They were flat and thin, and were placed in two rows of six each on a table in the holy place before the Lord. They were renewed every Sabbath (Le 24:5- 9), and those that were removed to give place to the new ones were to be eaten by the priests only in the holy place (see 1Sa 21:3- 6; comp. Mt 12:3- 4). This bread symbolically showed God's desire to have fellowship with His people.

**Shine**- To emit rays of light; to give light; to beam with steady radiance; to exhibit lightness or splendor; as, the sun shines by day; the moon shines by night. Shining differs from sparkling, glistening, glittering, as it usually implies a steady radiation or emission of light, whereas the latter words usually imply irregular or interrupted radiation.

**Ship**- A vehicle for traveling on water. For the most part, in the Bible, these are now called fishing boats.

**Shoe**- The shoes of the East were mostly the same as 'sandals' soles fastened to the feet by strings or thongs. John the Baptist declared he was not worthy to unloose the shoes of the Lord. Mr 1:7; Lu 3:16.

**Shore**- The coast or land adjacent to the sea, or to a large lake or river. This word is applied primarily to land contiguous to water; but it extends to the ground near the border of the sea or of a lake, which is covered with water.

**Shoulder**- Often alluded to in scripture as the place of strength, on which burdens are borne. The high priest had

the names of the twelve tribes on his shoulders, as in a place of safety. Ex 28:12. Of Christ it is said, when He comes to reign, the 'government shall be on his shoulder,' Isa 9:6; and, as the Good Shepherd, when He finds a lost sheep He places it on His shoulders. Lu 15:5.

**Shout**- To utter a sudden and loud outcry, usually in joy, triumph or exultation, or to animate soldiers in an onset.

**Short**- Not long; not having great length or extension; as a short distance; a short ferry; a short flight; a short piece of timber.

**Shorten**- Made shorter; abridged; contracted.

**Shun**- To avoid; to keep clear of; not to fall on or come in contact with; as, to shun rocks and shoals in navigation.

**Shut**- To close so as to hinder ingress or egress; as, to shut a door or gate; to shut the eyes or the mouth.

**Sick**- Affected with nausea; inclined to vomit; as, sick at the stomach.

**Sickly**- Not healthy; somewhat affected with disease; or habitually indisposed; as a sickly person, or a sickly constitution; a sickly plant.

**Sickle**- A reaping hook; a hooked instrument with teeth; used for cutting grain.

**Sidon / Zidon**- Ge 10:9,15; Jos 11:8; 19:28; Jg 1:31. Sidon was in Asher (Isa 23:2,4,12). An ancient mercantile city of Phoenicia, in the narrow plain between Lebanon and the Mediterranean, where the mountains recede two miles from the sea; 20 miles N. of Tyre.

**Sift**- o separate by a sieve, as the fine part of a substance from the coarse; as, to sift meal; to sift powder; to sift sand or lime.

**Sight**- What is seen physically or spiritually.

**Sign**- A token, pledge, or proof, Ge 9:12- 13; 17:11; Ex 3:12; Isa 8:18. Also a supernatural portent, Lu 21:11; and a miracle, regarded as a token of the divine agency, Ex 4:7- 9; Mr 8:11. The "signs of Heaven" were the movements and aspects of the Heavenly bodies, from which heathen astrologers pretended to obtain revelations, Isa 44:25; Jer 10:2.

**Signify**- To make known something, either by signs or words; to express or communicate to another any idea, thought, wish, a nod, wink, gesture, signal or other sign.

**Silas**- Paul's partner on his second missionary trip.

**Silence**- In a general sense, stillness, or entire absence of sound or noise; as the silence of midnight.

**Silk**- The fine soft thread produced by the insect called silk- worm or bombyx.

**Silly**- Weak in intellect; foolish; witless; destitute of ordinary strength of mind; simple.

**Silver**- A precious metal of a white color and lively brilliancy. It has neither taste nor smell. It is not as precious as gold. Symbolically, it is used to show God's value of everyday work done by His people in His kingdom.

**Simeon**- There is more than one Simeon named in the Bible starting with a son of Jacob.

**Similitude**- likeness, representation, 'pattern, form, structure.

**Simon**- There is more than one Simeon named in the Bible starting with a son of Jacob. This name is associated with Peter when he was acting in his flesh.

**Simple**- Single; consisting of one thing; uncompounded; unmingled; uncombined with anything else; as a simple substance; a simple idea; a simple sound.

**Sin**- A violation of Gods law. Please see the note for Romans 6:16, at [ljc1611kjv.com1kjv.com](http://ljc1611kjv.com1kjv.com), about the 'sin unto death'.

**Sinai**- The peninsula of Sinai is a triangular tract, bounded on the W. by the gulf of Suez, on the E. by the gulf of Akabah, and on the N. by a line drawn from Gaza through Beersheba to the S. of the Dead Sea. It is used, symbolically, for the bondage of religion which does not include a personal relationship with God.

**Sincerity**- Honesty of mind or intention; freedom from simulation or hypocrisy. We may question a man's prudence, when we cannot question his sincerity.

**Sing**- To utter sounds with various inflections of melodious modulations of voice, as fancy may dictate, or according to the notes of a song or tune the noise of them that sing do I hear Ex. 32.

**Single**- Separate; one; only; individual; consisting of one only; as a single star; a single city; a single act.

**Sink**- To fall by the force of greater gravity, in a medium or substance of less specific gravity; to subside; opposed to swim or float.

**Sinners**- All people until they are forgiven by our "Lord Jesus Christ".

**Sion / Zion**- This was in reality a part of Jerusalem, being one of the mountains on which Jerusalem was built. Zion is often called 'the city of David,' it was where he dwelt. 2Sa 5:7; 1Ch 11:5; Mic 3:10,12.

**Sir**- a term of respect.

**Sister**- A saved woman or a female child of the same parent as another identified person.

**Skill**- The familiar knowledge of any art or science, united with readiness and dexterity in execution or performance, or in the application of the art or science to practical purposes.

**Skull**- The bone that forms the exterior of the head, and encloses the brain; the brain- pan. It is composed of several parts united at the sutures.

**Sky**- What constitutes the atmosphere of this Earth.

**Slack**- Not using due diligence.

**Slain**- Killed.

**Slay**- The act of killing.

**Slander**- o defame; to injure by maliciously uttering a false report respecting one; to tarnish or impair the reputation of one by false tales, maliciously told or propagated.

**Slaughter**- Usually denotes great destruction of life by violent means; as the slaughter of men in battle.

**Sleep**- To take rest by a suspension of the voluntary exercise of the powers of the body and mind. This word is also used, symbolically, for saved people who are physically dead but spiritually alive in Heaven.

**Slew**- The past- tense form of the word slay. The proper sense is to strike, and as beating was an early mode of killing, this word, like smite, came to signify to kill.

**Slothful**- Inactive; sluggish; lazy; indolent; idle. He that is slothful in his work, is brother to him that is a great waster.

**Slow**- Not swift.

**Slumber**- To sleep lightly; to doze.

**Smell**- One of our physical senses. The "word of God" makes it clear that our primary sense is spiritual and that

all of our physical senses are actually attached to our spiritual senses, which are what we truly use.

**Smite**- To strike; to throw, drive or force against, as the fist or hand, a stone or a weapon; to reach with a blow or a weapon; as, to smite one with the fist; to smite with a rod or with a stone. The important difference between this word and strike is that smite is done against a person and includes passion while strike can be done against an object and does not have to include passion.

**Smoke**- The exhalation, visible vapor or substance that escapes or is expelled in combustion from the substance burning. It is particularly applied to the volatile matter expelled from vegetable matter, or wood coal, peat, etc.

**Smooth**- Having an even surface, or a surface so even that no roughness or points are perceptible to the touch; not rough; as smooth glass; smooth porcelain. The outline must be smooth, imperceptible to the touch.

**Snow**- Frozen vapor; watery particles congealed into white crystals in the air, and falling to the earth. When there is no wind, these crystals fall in flakes or unbroken collections, sometimes extremely beautiful.

**Snare**- An instrument for catching animals, particularly fowls, by the leg.

**So**- Presents a result of what came before this word.

**Sober**- Having control of your emotion.

**Soberly**- Without intemperate passion; coolly; calmly; moderately; Gravely; seriously.

**Sodom**- The wickedness of its inhabitants brought down upon it fire from heaven, by which it was destroyed (Ge 18:16- 33; 19:1- 29; De 23:17). This city and its awful destruction are frequently alluded to in Scripture (De 29:23; 32:32; Isa 1:9- 10; 3:9; 13:19; Jer 23:14; Eze 16:46- 56; Zep 2:9; Mt 10:15; Ro 9:29; 2Pe 2:6).

**Soft**- Easily yielding to pressure; the contrary of hard; as a soft bed; a soft peach; soft earth.

**Sojourn**- To dwell for a time; to dwell or live in a place as a temporary resident, or as a stranger, not considering the place as his permanent habitation.

**Sold**- To transfer property or the exclusive right of possession to another for an equivalent in money. It is correlative to buy.

**Soldier**- part from the common application of this term (for which see ARMY, ARMOUR, etc.) it is used in the N.T.

for the service of a Christian. Two things are said of the Christian soldier. He must "endure hardness," that is, share in the suffering incident to warfare; and he must not entangle "himself with the affairs of this life, that he may please him who hath chosen him to be a soldier": that is, be quite free to obey his Captain in all things.

**Solitary**- Living alone; not having company. Some of the more ferocious animals are solitary, seldom or never being found in flocks or herds.

**Solomon**- Son of David and Bathsheba. Bathsheba He reigned forty years over the united kingdom from B.C. 1015 to 975.

**Son**- A person who receives the character of the Father. Paul had three men that he called "son" even though he was not their physical father. The "Son of God" shows us the character of God the Father.

**Son, beloved**- God the Father called "Jesus" this Matthew 3:17; Matthew 17:5; Mark 1:11; Mark 9:7; Luke 3:22; Luke 9:35; Luke 20:13 and John 8:18.

**Son of David**- A male in the succession to receive the crown of David. "Jesus" was a 'Son of David' as the adopted son of Joseph and we are told this in the genealogy that Matthew reports.

**Son of God**- "Jesus" was physically the 'Son of God' because God's Holy Ghost made Mary pregnant. He was also the 'Son of God' because He showed us God's character.

**Son of man (upper- case=Son of God)**- "Jesus" was physically the 'Son of Man' because He inherited His human nature from Mary. He also was a weak human being like all of us until He went to Hell, after the crucifixion, and took back His power and authority and God to defeat all of the devils and "rob" Satan.

**son of man (lower- case = man)**- We all have certain traits by being born as a human man.

**sons of God**- After we are saved, God gives us the "power to become the sons of God" (John 1:12) by receiving God's character as our own.

**Song**- In general, that which is sung or uttered with musical modulations of the voice, whether of the human voice or that of a bird.

**Soothsaying**- The foretelling of future events by persons without divine aid or authority, and thus distinguished from prophecy.

**Sop**- Joh 13:26, a small portion of bread, dipped in sauce, wine, or some other liquid at table, Ru 2:14.

**Sorcerer**- One who practiced sorcery; nearly synonymous with magician, soothsayer, or wizard.

**Sorcery**- The practice of incantations and divinations, and boasted of an evil power, in consequence of their deep science and by means of certain rites, to evoke the spirits of the dead from their gloomy abodes, and compel them to disclose information on subjects beyond the reach of human powers. There are people who claim that they were ancient drug dealers because the Greek name, for sorcerer, is where we get the name of pharmacist.

**Sore**- A place in an animal body where the skin and flesh are ruptured or bruised, so as to be pained with the slightest pressure. 2. An ulcer; a boil. 3. In Scriptures, grief; affliction. 2 Chron. 6.

**Sorrow**- The uneasiness or pain of mind which is produced by the loss of any good. or of frustrated hopes of good, or expected loss of happiness; to grieve; to be sad.

**Sorry**- Grieved for the loss of some good; pained for some evil that has happened to one's self or friends or country. It does not ordinarily imply severe grief, but rather slight or transient regret.

**Sort**- The method and result of separating items according to a chosen method.

**Soul** – The way you think, the way that you react emotionally to the circumstances of life and how you make decisions of the will; all long term. The same things, short- term, are called the “heart” by “the word of God”.

**Sound**– Undecayed; whole; perfect, or not defective; as sound fruit; a sound apple or melon.

**Sound Doctrine**– Spiritual teaching that matches what is actually in “the word of God” and not taken out of context nor added to nor perverted in any way. Please see the Study with the same name at [ljc1611kiv.com1kiv.com](http://ljc1611kiv.com1kiv.com).

**Sovereign**- Supreme in power; possessing supreme dominion; as a sovereign ruler of the universe.

**Sower**- He that scatters seed for propagation. Behold, a sower went forth to sow. Matt. 13.

### **Sowing and Reaping**

- You can't reap if you don't sow.
- You will reap what you sow. Nobody plants a seed of corn and expects to get an apple.

- You reap more than you sow. One corn seed yields a stalk with several ears of corn.
- You will reap after you sow. We must wait for God to cause the results that come from what we sow.
- You will reap a better and larger crop if you take the time to prepare the ground before you sow.
- You will reap a better and larger crop if you take the time to water, weed and generally care for your crop after you sow.
- You must be prepared to reap in the proper season.
- You must be prepared to be sustained, for a long time, by what you reap. Therefore, be sure that you are ready to live on the results of what you sow.

**Space**- Room; extension. Space in the abstract, is mere extension. Pure space is capable neither of resistance nor motion.

**Spare**- Dispensed with; saved.

**Sparrow**- A small bird. Mentioned among the offerings made by the very poor. Two sparrows were sold for a farthing (Mt 10:29), and five for two farthings (Lu 12:6).

**Speak**- To utter words or articulate sounds, as human beings; to express thoughts by words.

**Speech**- The faculty of uttering articulate sounds or words, as in human beings; the faculty of expressing thoughts by words or articulate sounds. Speech was given to man by his Creator for the noblest purposes.

**Speed**- To dispatch; to send away in haste.

**Speedily**- To move with speed.

**Spend**- To lay out; to dispose of; to part with; as, to spend money for food. Why do ye spend money for that which is not bread? Is. 55.

**Spent**- The past- tense form of spend.

**Spices**- aromatic substances, of which several are named in Ex 30. They were used in the sacred anointing oil (Ex 25:6; 35:8; 1Ch 9:29), and in embalming the dead (2Ch 16:14; Lu 23:56- 24:1; Joh 19:39- 40). Spices were stored by Hezekiah in his treasure- house (2Ki 20:13; Isa 39:2).

**Spies / Spy**- Secret agents sent to gather information on an enemy.

**Spirit**– Innermost being of a human. Type of spiritual being such as God, angels, devils and more. When “the word of God” uses a capitalized form, it is always speaking about “God’s Holy Spirit”. When it uses a lower- case form, it is speaking about a devil or a man’s spirit.

**Spirit of the Lord**- "God's Holy Spirit" Who gives us God's never- changing laws and judgments. The "seven Spirits of God" are identified in Isaiah 11:2 and explained in the note for Revelation 1:4 at [ljc1611kjv.com](http://ljc1611kjv.com).

**Spirit of Slumber**- God gives this to people who are bored with "the word of God" and choose to believe doctrinal error instead. Please see the note for Romans 11:8 at [ljc1611kjv.com](http://ljc1611kjv.com) for references and explanations of this phrase.

**Spiritual**- Belonging to the spiritual reality.

**Spiritual Powers**- Powers exercised by spirits. They can affect the spiritual reality and the physical reality.

**Spin**- The act, practice or art of drawing out and twisting into threads, as wool, flax and cotton.

**Spit**- Sending moisture out of the mouth by force. Spitting in a person's face indicated gross contempt (Nu 12:14; De 25:9; Job 30:10; Isa 50:6; Mt 26:67; 27:30, etc.); when performed by an unclean person it produced defilement (Le 15:8) which necessitated washing the clothes and a bath.

**Spite**- Hatred; rancor; malice; malignity; malevolence. Spite, however, is not always synonymous with these words. It often denotes a less deliberate and fixed hatred than malice and malignity, and is often a sudden fit of ill will excited by temporary vexation. It is the effect of extreme irritation, and is accompanied with a desire of revenge, or at least a desire to vex the object of ill will.

**Spoil**- To destroy with internal corruption.

**Spot**- The smallest appearance of corruption from the world.

**Sprang / Sprung**- past- tense form of spring.

**Spread**- To extend in length and breadth, or in breadth only; to stretch or expand to a broader surface; as, to spread a carpet or a table cloth; to spread a sheet on the ground.

**Spring**- To vegetate and rise out of the ground; to begin to appear; as vegetables.

**Sprinkle**- To scatter; to disperse; as a liquid or a dry substance composed of fine separable particles; to besprinkle; as, to sprinkle the earth with water; to sprinkle a floor with sand; to sprinkle paper with iron filings. In addition, this action has symbolic applications. Blood was sprinkled to atone for guilt, as the high priest did (Le 4:6;

16:14,19), or with water for purifying (Nu 19:18- 21; Ac 2:33).

**Stable**- Fixed; firmly established; not to be easily moved, shaken or overthrown; as a stable government.

**Stablish**- To fix; to settle in a state for permanence; to make firm. In lieu of this, establish is now always used.

**Staff**- Originally, this word described stick carried in the hand for support or defense by a person walking; hence, a support; that which props or upholds. It is now used for anything which supports accomplishing a job such as a pastor can have a staff of people. Bread is the proverbially called the staff of life.

**Stagger**- To reel; to vacillate; to move to one side and the other in standing or walking; not to stand or walk with steadiness. Please see the note for Romans 4:19 for Bible references to where people staggered at the promise of God and other references to people who were encouraged by God when they refused to stagger at the promise of God.

**Stairs**- Stairs, in the plural, a series of steps by which persons ascend to a higher room in a building.

**Stammering Lips**- Used symbolically for symbolism.

**Stanch**- Stopped or restrained from flowing.

**Stand**- To be upon the feet, as an animal; not to sit, kneel or lie.

**Stand Fast**- To be on its foundation; not to be overthrown or demolished by anything.

**Star**- An apparently small luminous body in the heavens, that appears in the night, or when its light is not obscured by clouds or lost in the brighter effulgence of the sun. Stars are fixed or planetary. The fixed stars are known by their perpetual twinkling, and by their being always in the same position in relation to each other. The planets do not twinkle, and they revolve about the sun. There is also a miraculous appearance of a star which was specially sent for the nativity. It not only appeared to the Magi in the East, but guided them from Jerusalem to Bethlehem, and 'stood over' where the young child was. Faith in the power of God dispels all difficulty as to the star. Mt 2:1- 10.

**State**- Condition; the circumstances of a being or thing at any given time.

**Stature**- The natural height of an animal body. It is more generally used of the human body. This word is used to express that "Jesus" grew physically while He was a teen.

**Statute**- An act of the legislature commanding or prohibiting something; a positive law.

**Stave**- A thin narrow piece of timber, of which casks are made.

**Stead**- Place or room which another had or might have, noting substitution, replacing or filling the place of another, as, David died and Solomon reigned in his stead.

**Steal**- To take and carry away feloniously, as the personal goods of another. To constitute stealing or theft, the taking must be felonious, that is, with an intent to take what belongs to another, and without his consent.

**Stealth**- Secret act; clandestine practice; means unperceived employed to gain an object; way or manner not perceived; used in a good or bad sense.

**Stedfast**- stead and fast. Constant; firm; resolute; not fickle or wavering; fast fixed; firm; firmly fixed or established; as the stedfast globe of earth.

**Steep**- Making a large angle with the plane of the horizon; ascending or descending with a great inclination; precipitous; as a steep hill or mountain; a steep roof; a steep ascent; a steep declivity.

**Stephen**- One of the first deacons. The first reported martyr of the New Testament.

**Stephanas**- Someone led to salvation n by Paul and was one of the few that Paul baptized.

**Steward**- A person who manages the affairs of another according to his instructions and for his benefit. Historically, this title was used for a man employed in great families to manage the domestic concerns, superintend the other servants, collect the rents or income, keep the accounts, etc. See Genesis 15:2 and 43:19.

**Step**- To move the foot; to advance or recede by a movement of the foot or feet; as, to step forward, or to step backward.

**Stiffnecked / Stiff Necked**- Stiff and neck. Stubborn; inflexibly obstinate; contumacious; as a stiff-necked people; stiff-necked pride.

**Stick**- The small shoot or branch of a tree or shrub, cut off; a rod; also, a staff.

**Sting**- To pierce with the sharp pointed instrument with which certain animals are furnished, such as bees, wasps, scorpions and the like.

**Stir**- To move; to change place in any manner.

**Stock**- The trunk of a tree, Job 14:8, or a reproachful name for the idols carved out of it, Jer 2:27; Ho 4:12. The stocks in which Paul and Silas were fastened, Ac 16:24, were an instrument well known in Europe and America until recent times; consisting of two beams, the upper one movable, with grooves between them large enough to receive the ankles of the prisoner. The arms also were sometimes confined. Stocks were frequently erected in market places, that the insults of the populace might be added to the pain of confinement, Job 13:27; Jer 20:2.

**Stone**- The same composition as a rock or a pebble but with a size between the two. "Jesus Christ" is called "the chief corner stone" of our relationship with God.

**Stop**- To obstruct; to render impassable; as, to stop a way, road or passage. To hinder; to impede; to arrest progress; as, to stop a passenger in the road; to stop the course of a stream.

Stopped- The past- tense form of the word "stop". Defined as: 'Closed; obstructed; hindered from proceeding; impeded; intercepted'.

**Storm**- A violent wind; a tempest. Thus, a storm of wind, is correct language, as the proper sense of the word is rushing, violence. It has primarily no reference to a fall of rain or snow.

**Straight / Straightway**- The word straight is used for direct or right, while the word strait is used for narrow. The shortest distance between two points is a straight line.

**Strait**- Narrow. See the prior note for straight.

**Straiten**- Impeded or restricted; narrowed. Job 18:7; Eze 42:6 Distressed. Lu 12:50.

**Strange**- New; not before known, heard or seen. The former custom was familiar; the latter was new and strange to them.

**Strangers**- Aliens, people who have a different citizenship, from us, in this physical world.

**Strawed**- Past participle of "to strew," "scatter," or "spread about," as powder.

**Stream**- A current of water or other fluid; a liquid substance flowing in a line or course, either on the earth, as a river or brook, or from a vessel or other reservoir or fountain.



**Street**- Properly, a paved way or road; but in usage, any way or road in a city, chiefly a main way, in distinction from a lane or alley.

**Stretch**- To draw out to greater length; to extend in a line; as, to stretch a cord or a rope.

**Strength**- That property or quality of an animal body by which it is enabled to move itself or other bodies. We say, a sick man has not strength to walk, or to raise his head or his arm. We say, a man has strength to lift a weight, or to draw it. This quality is called also power and force. But force is also used to denote the effect of strength exerted, or the quantity of motion. Strength in this sense, is positive, or the power of producing positive motion or action, and is opposed to weakness.

**Stricken**- Past- form of strike. Advanced; worn; far gone.

**Strife**- Exertion or contention for superiority; contest of emulation, either by intellectual or physical efforts.

**Strike**- To touch or hit with some force, either with the hand or an instrument; to give a blow to.

**Strip**- Pulled or torn off; peeled; skinned; deprived; divested; made naked; impoverished.

**Stripe**- A line or long narrow division of anything, of a different color from the ground as a stripe of red on a green ground; hence, any linear variation of color. As a punishment, stripes were put on a back with something as a rod. They were not to exceed forty (De 25:1- 3), and hence arose the custom of limiting them to thirty- nine (2Co 11:24). Paul claimed the privilege of a Roman citizen in regard to the infliction of stripes (Ac 16:37- 38; 22:25- 29). Our Lord was beaten with stripes (Mt 27:26).

**Strive**- To make efforts; to use exertions; to endeavor with earnestness; to labor hard; applicable to exertions of body or mind.

**Strong**- Having physical active power, or great physical power; having the power of exerting great bodily force; vigorous. A patient is recovering from sickness, but is not yet strong enough to walk.

**Struck**- Past- tense form of strike.

**Stubble**- Substance of little value that is only used in desperation or as a soil builder.

**Study**- Literally, a setting of the mind or thoughts upon a subject; hence, application of mind of books, to arts or science, or to any subject, for the purpose of learning what is not before known.

**Stuff**- A mass of matter, indefinitely; or a collection of substances; as a heap of dust, of chips or of dross.

**Stumble**- To trip in walking or moving in any way upon the legs; to strike the foot so as to fall, or to endanger a fall; applied to any animal. A man may stumble, as well as a horse.

**Stumblingblock**- Anything placed in the way of another over which he might stumble and fall. It was forbidden in the law, and such things were to be removed out of the way of Israel. Le 19:14; Isa 57:14. Their iniquity, however, became a stumbling block to them. Eze 7:19; 14:3- 7. In the church there should be care that nothing is practiced by one that might cause another to stumble spiritually. Ro 14:13; 1Co 8:9.

**Subdue**- Conquered and reduced to subjection; oppressed; crushed; tamed; softened.

**Subject**- To yield, resign or surrender to the power, will or authority of another.

**Subjection**- The act of subduing; the act of vanquishing and bringing under the dominion of another. The state of being under the power, control and government of another. The safety of life, liberty, and property depends on our subjection to the laws.

**Submit**- To yield, resign or surrender to the power, will or authority of another.

**Suborn**- To procure witnesses secretly for the purpose of false declarations. Ac 6:11.

**Substance**- In a general sense, being; something existing by itself; that which really is or exists; equally applicable to matter or spirit. Thus, the soul of man is called an immaterial substance, a cogitative substance, a substance endued with thought. We say, a stone is a hard substance, tallow is a soft substance.

**Subtily / Subtily**- Slyness in design; cunning; artifice; refinement; extreme acuteness. Intelligible discourses are spoiled by too much subtily in nice divisions.

**Subvert**- To corrupt; to confound; to pervert the mind, and turn it from the truth. 2 Tim.2.

**Succor / Succour**- Aid; help; assistance; particularly, assistance that relieves and delivers from difficulty, want or distress.

**Suck**- To draw with the mouth; to draw out, as a liquid from a cask, or milk from the breast; to draw into the mouth. To suck is to exhaust the air of the mouth or of a

tube; the fluid then rushes into the mouth or tube by means of the pressure of the surrounding air.

**Suckling**- Nursing at the breast.

**Sudden / Suddenly**- Happening without previous notice; coming unexpectedly, or without the common preparative. And sudden fear troubleth thee. Job.22.

**Suffer**- To feel or bear what is painful, disagreeable or distressing, either to the body or mind; to undergo. We suffer pain of body; we suffer grief of mind.

**Suffering of Jesus Christ**- This was prophesied many places and he suffered because religious leaders wanted people to follow them instead of obeying God on a personal basis. He also went into hell and had to defeat all devils by Himself in order to give us the victory.

**Sufficient**- Enough; equal to the end proposed; adequate to wants; competent; as provision sufficient for the family; water sufficient for the voyage; an army sufficient to defend the country.

**Summer**- In the northern hemisphere, the season of the year comprehended in the months June, July and August; during which time, the sun being north of the equator, shines more directly upon This part of the earth, which, together with the increased length of the days, renders This the hottest period of the year. In latitudes south of the equator, just the opposite takes place, or it is summer there when it is winter here. The entire year is also sometimes divided into summer and winter, the former signifying the warmer and the latter the colder part of the year.

**Sumptuous**- Expensively; splendidly; with great magnificence.

**Sun**- The major source of light on this physical Earth. Also used, symbolically, for the "Son of God".

**Superscription**- That which is written or engraved on the outside, or above something else. The superscription of his accusation was written over, THE KING OF THE JEWS. Mark 15. Luke 23. 2. An impression of letters on coins. Matt.22.

**Superstitious**- Proceeding from superstition; manifesting superstition; as superstitious rites; superstitious observances. Over scrupulous and rigid in religious observances; addicted to superstition; full of idle fancies and scruples in regard to religion; as superstitious people.

**Superfluous**- More than necessary or wanted. Le 21:18.

**Supplication**- Entreaty; humble and earnest prayer in worship. It is proper Biblical doctrine that all saved should always use supplication when they pray to God.

**Supper**- In the East This is the chief meal of the day; it is enjoyed in the evening when the labors of the day are over and the partakers have only rest before them. Mr 6:21; Joh 12:2.

**Surety**- One who becomes responsible for another. Christ is the surety of the better covenant (Heb 7:22). In him we have the assurance that all its provisions will be fully and faithfully carried out. Solomon warns against incautiously becoming security for another (Pr 6:1- 5; 11:15; 17:18; 20:16).

**Surmise / Surmisings**- To suspect; to imagine without certain knowledge; to entertain thoughts that something does or will exist, but upon slight evidence.

**Surname**- In scripture This means an additional or added name, not a family name, as the word now implies. Isa 44:5; 45:4; Mt 10:3: Mr 3:16- 17.

**Sustenance**- Support; maintenance; subsistence; as the sustenance of the body; the sustenance of life. 2. That which supports life; food; victuals; provisions. This city has ample sustenance.

**Symbols of the Lord's Supper in Passover**- Please see the4 note for Luke 22:7, at [ljc1611kjv.com1kjv.com](http://ljc1611kjv.com1kjv.com), for these symbols.

**Supply**- To fill up, as any deficiency happens; to furnish what is wanted; to afford or furnish a sufficiency; as, to supply the poor with bread and clothing.

**Support**- To bear; to sustain; to uphold; as, a prop or pillar supports a structure; an abutment supports an arch; the stem of a tree supports the branches.

**Suppose**- To lay down or state as a proposition or fact that may exist or be true, though not known or believed to be true or to exist; or to imagine or admit to exist, for the sake of argument or illustration.

**Swaddling**- Binding in tight clothes.

**Swallow**- Taken into the stomach; absorbed; received without scruple.

**Swear / Sware**- To affirm or utter a solemn declaration, with an appeal to God for the truth of what is affirmed. Ye shall not swear by my name falsely. Lev.19. But I say unto you, swear not at all. Matt.5.

**Sweat**- Water let out of skin to cool the body. In the sweat of thy face shalt thou eat bread" (Ge 3:19).

**Swell**- Growing or enlarging in its dimensions; growing tumid; inflating; growing tumid; inflating; growing or making louder.

**Sweep**- To brush or rub over with a brush, broom or besom, for removing loose dirt; to clean by brushing; as, to sweep a floor.

**Sweet**- Agreeable or grateful to the taste; as, sugar or honey is sweet.

**Swim**- To move progressively in water by means of the motion of the hands and feet, or of fins.

**Swept**- Past- tense form of sweep.

**Swine**- One of the animals classed among the unclean, and which is supposed to have been held in abhorrence as food by the Jews. The prophet Isaiah, however, charges them with eating swine's flesh; and their apostasy was such that he says when they offered an oblation, it was as if they had offered swine's blood: their heartless profession was abhorrent to God. Isa 65:4; 66:3,17.

**Sword**- An offensive weapon worn at the side, and used by hand either for thrusting or cutting. 2. Figuratively, destruction by war.

**Sworn**- Past- tense of swear.

**Sycamore**- A type of tree which produces mulberries and figs.

**Synagogue**- A place used to worship. In the history of Jews, they appear to have arisen during the exile, in the abeyance of the temple- worship.

**Syria**- Originally included Mesopotamia: Ge 25:20; 28:5; De 26:5; Ac 7:2. More properly the country around Damascus: 2Sa 8:6.

T

**Tabernacle**- A tent. Num.24. Matt.17. 2. A temporary habitation. 3. Among the Jews, a movable building, so contrived as to be taken to pieces with ease and reconstructed, for the convenience of being carried during the wanderings of the Israelites in the wilderness.

**Table**- "Table" is derived from the Latin tabula, meaning primarily "a board," but with a great variety of other

significances, of which "writing- tablet" is the most important for the Biblical use of "table." So in English "table" meant at first "any surface" and, in particular, "a surface for writing". (That is where we get the word "tablet".)

**Tail**- The part of an animal which terminates its body behind. In many quadrupeds, the tail is a shoot or projection covered with hair. In fowls, the tail consists of feathers, or is covered with them, which serve to assist in the direction of their flight. In fishes the tail is formed usually by a gradual sloping of the body, ending in a fin.

**Tale**- Trifling incidents; or a fictitious narrative; idle tales. Luke 24. We spend our years as a tale that is told Ps.90.

**Talent**- This was a weight used among the Jews, Greeks, and Romans, but varying exceedingly in different countries and in different parts of the same country.

**Talk**- To converse familiarly; to speak, as in familiar discourse, when two or more persons interchange thoughts.

**Tame**- That has lost its native wildness and shyness; mild; accustomed to man; domestic.

**Tares**- The darnel before it comes into ear is very similar in appearance to wheat. Please see the 'Parable of the Wheat and Tares' at [ljc1611kjv.com](http://ljc1611kjv.com).

**Tarry**- Wait.

**Tarsus**- Paul's birthplace and early residence. Capital of Cilicia, in a plain on the river Cydnus at the foot of the passes northward over Mount Taurus into Cappadocia and Lycaonia.

**Taste**- To perceive by means of the tongue; to have a certain sensation in consequence of something applied to the tongue, the organ of taste; as, to taste a sweet or an acid.

**Tax**- A way for governments to collect money from citizens. There are as many different ways for governments to do this as there are thoughts in the head of government people.

**Teach**- Giving of knowledge and understanding.

**Teacher**- A person who teaches.

**Tear**- Rending; pulling apart; lacerating; violent; raging.

**Teareth**- An ongoing lifestyle of tearing.

**Tears-** The limpid fluid secreted by the lacrymal gland, and appearing in the eyes, or flowing from them. A tear, in the singular, is a drop or a small quantity of that fluid. Tears are excited by passions, particularly by grief. This fluid is also called forth by any injury done to the eye. It serves to moisten the cornea and preserve its transparency, and to remove any dust or fine substance that enters the eye and gives pain.

**Teeth-** Plural of tooth, which see. The phrase 'in the teeth' is used for directly.

**Tell-** To utter; to express in words; to communicate to others.

**Told-** Past- tense of tell.

**Tender-** "Soft," "delicate," in De 28:56; 2Ki 22:19 and 2Ch 34:27. Also used for a physical defect is described ("weak-eyed") In Ge 29:17, "Leah's eyes were tender". Also, for "Tender-hearted" in 2Ch 13:7; 2Ki 22:19; 2Ch 34:27 and Eph 4:32.

**Tenth-** One out of every ten. Also, the amount of tithe claimed by God.

**Temperate / Temperance-** Moderate; not excessive; as temperate heat; a temperate climate; temperate air.

**Tempest-** Heavy storms of wind and rain are common in Palestine and the Mediterranean. The storms particularly mentioned in the Bible are: (1) the 40 days' rain of ~the great flood of Noah (Ge 7:4); (2) hail and rain as a plague in Egypt (Ex 9:18); (3) the great rain after the drought and the contest of Elijah on Carmel (1Ki 18:45); (4) the tempest on the sea in the story of Jonah (1:4); (5) the storm on the Lake of Galilee when Jesus was awakened to calm the waves (Mt 8:24; Mr 4:37; Lu 8:23); (6) the storm causing the shipwreck of Paul at Melita (Ac 27:18).

**Temple-** A house of worship. Also used, symbolically, for our body.

**Temple of God-** Only used in the New Testament and speaks of our bodies except for Revelation where it is in the New Jerusalem.

**Temple of the Lord-** Only used in the Old Testament and before the birth of John the Baptist and is, therefore, still dealing with Old Testament theology.

**Temporal-** Measured or limited by time. This physical reality has four dimensions: height, width, depth and time. Time is not a dimension controlling the spiritual. Please

see the note for John 6:7, at [ljc1611kjb.com](http://ljc1611kjb.com), for various Biblical measurements.

**Tempt-** To incite or solicit to an evil act; to entice to something wrong by presenting arguments that are plausible or convincing, or by the offer of some pleasure or apparent advantage as the inducement. Please also see temptation.

**Tempt God-** This is a commandment to not test God but believe Him. The note for Luke 4:12, at [ljc1611kjb.com](http://ljc1611kjb.com), gives references to where God's people tempted God and suffered the consequences.

**Temptation-** Trial; a being put to the test.

**Tempter-** Person who tempts or tests another, usually to do wrong but not always.

**Ten Commandments-** They are listed in Exodus 20 and Deuteronomy 5. Please see the section called [Jesus and the Ten Commandments](#), in the Doctrinal Study called: [Significant Gospel Events](#), at [ljc1611kjb.com](http://ljc1611kjb.com) for doctrine on these commandments. The only one of the Ten Commandments not repeated in the New Testament, it to keep the sabbath. In addition, as "Lord of Sabbath", our "Lord Jesus Christ" did away with Sabbath worship. Instead, saved people are to worship on Sunday to celebrate His resurrection.

**Terrify-** To frighten; to alarm or shock with fear. They were terrified and affrighted. Luke 24. When ye shall hear of wars and commotions, be not terrified. Luke 21. Job.7.

**Terror-** Extreme fear; violent dread; fright; fear that agitates the body and mind. The sword without, and terror within. Deut.32.

**Testament-** Part of a legal document that has a last will and testament.

**Testify-** To make a statement which is intended to be used in a court of law if necessary. To make a solemn declaration, verbal or written, to establish some fact; to give testimony for the purpose of communicating to others a knowledge of something not known to them. In judicial proceedings, to make a solemn declaration under oath, for the purpose of establishing or making proof of some act to a court; to give testimony in a cause depending before a tribunal.

**Testimony-** Statements that are used in a court of law to judge the legality of someone's actions. These require first-hand experience because anything else would be rumor and not legal to present in court.

**Testimonies**- Plural of testimony.

**Testimonies of the LORD**- Evidence that a child of God found the promise of God in the word of God, obeyed what the word of God said to do, had faith that God would keep His promise in His time and in His way, and received the promise. Receiving the promise, after believing it by faith and acting on God's requirement is "the testimony of the Lord".

**Tetrarch**- Properly governor of the fourth part of a larger province and kingdom. The title "king" is applied by courtesy, not right.

**Thank**- To express gratitude for a favor; to make acknowledgments to one for kindness bestowed. We are bound to thank God always for you. 2 Thess 1. Joab bowed himself and thanked the king. 2 Sam.14.

**The**— There is only one and here it is.

**the Christ**- There is only one Christ and He is presented in "the word of God". "Jesus" admitted that he was "the Christ" even though He knew that the Jewish religious leaders would use that admittance as an excuse to crucify Him

**Theater**- only mentioned in Ac 19:29,31. The ruins of this theatre at Ephesus still exist, and they show that it was a magnificent structure, capable of accommodating some 56,700 persons. It was the largest structure of the kind that ever existed. Theatres, as places of amusement, were unknown to the Jews.

**Thee**— You personally. This word is not "old English" but was created for the KJV- 1611 to convey the idea of a personal relationship with God. Religions lie about it because they want to replace your personal relationship with their religious activities.

**Theft**- The act of stealing. In law, the private, unlawful, felonious taking of another person's goods or movables, with an intent to steal them. To constitute theft, the taking must be in private or without the owner's knowledge, and it must be unlawful or felonious, that is, it must be with a design to deprive the owner of his property privately and against his will.

**Then**- This word follows a conditional ('if') statement with the results of that statement or provides the next action in a sequence of actions.

**Thenceforth**— Thence and forth. What follows this word happens after the time of the event which was identified before this word.

**Therefore**— What follows this word is a direct result of what came before this word.

**Thessalonica**- large and populous city on the sea-coast of Macedonia. Cassander having enlarged it, named it after his wife Thessalonica, the sister of Alexander the Great. Under the Romans it was a city of note, and was eventually made a free city and became the capital of Macedonia.

**Thief**- One who secretly, unlawfully and feloniously takes the goods or personal property of another. The thief takes the property of another privately; the robber by open force.

**Thigh**- That part of men, quadrupeds and fowls, which is between the leg and the trunk. The mode of taking an oath, alluded to in Ge 24:2- 9; 47:29- 31, was significant of the swearer's obligation to obedience. Jacob's thigh was disabled by the Angel, to show the patriarch that his prevalence was through his faith and prayer, not through force, Ge 32:25- 31.

**Thine**- What is part of your personal person. This word is not "old English" but was created for the KJV- 1611 to convey the idea of a personal relationship with God. Religions lie about it because they want to replace your personal relationship with their religious activities.

**Think**- To have the mind occupied on some subject; to have ideas, or to revolve ideas in the mind. -- For that I am I know, because I think. These are not matters to be slightly thought on.

**Thirst**- One of the most powerful natural appetites, the craving for water or other drink. Besides its natural significance, thirst is figuratively used of strong spiritual desire. The soul thirsts for God (Psalms 42:2; 63:1). Jesus meets the soul's thirst with water of life (John 4:13 ff; Joh 6:35; 7:37).

**Thistles and Thorns**- The result of God cursing the ground after Adam sinned. There are about a dozen different words translated 'thorns,' and 'thistles,' showing how plentiful these results of the curse are in this sin-stained world.

**Thomas**- twin, one of the twelve (Mt 10:3; Mr 3:18, etc.). He was also called Didymus (Joh 11:16; 20:24), which is the Greek equivalent of the Hebrew name. All we know regarding him is recorded in the fourth Gospel (Joh 11:15-16; 14:4- 5; 20:24- 25,26- 29). From the circumstance that in the lists of the apostles he is always mentioned along with Matthew, who was the son of Alphaeus (Mr 3:18), and that these two are always followed by James, who was

also the son of Alphaeus, Bible research shows that these three, Matthew, Thomas, and James, were brothers.

**Thong**- A strap of leather, used for fastening anything.

**Thou**- You personally when dealing with others.

**Thorn**- A tree or shrub armed with spines or sharp ligneous shoots; as the black thorn; white thorn, &c. The word is sometimes applied to a bush with prickles; as a rose on a thorn. Thorns are part of the result from God cursing the ground.

**Thorn in the Flesh**- This is symbolic language which speaks about Satan causing constant pain to Paul and God allowing it to keep Paul from becoming too proud. Many people claim to have something similar but they are only reaping the results of their own life and not having a devil attack them for serving God.

**Thought**- Primarily the passive participle of think. Thought is either the act or operation of the mind, when attending to a particular subject or thing or it is the idea consequent on that operation.

**Threat**- To declare the purpose of inflicting punishment, pain or other evil on another, for some sin or offense; to menace. God threatens the finally impenitent with everlasting banishment from his presence.

**Throat**- The anterior part of the neck of an animal, in which are the gullet and windpipe, or the passages for the food and breath.

**Throng**- A crowd; a multitude of persons or of living beings pressing or pressed into a close body or assemblage; as a throng of people at a play- house or a heavenly throng.

**Through**- How you from one side of a barrier to the other side by taking you inside of the barrier. For example, Galatians 4:7 says: "Wherefore thou art no more a servant, but a son; and if a son, then an heir of God through Christ". Thus, we only get the relationship of being a "son of God" by going through our ongoing personal relationship which "the word of God" calls "Christ".

**Throne**- A royal chair or seat of dignity (De 17:18; 2Sa 7:13; Ps 45:6); an elevated seat with a canopy and hangings, which cover it. It denotes the seat of the high priest in 1Sa 1:9; 4:13, and of a provincial governor in Ne 3:7; Ps 122:5.

**Thrown Down**- Forcibly remove from an exalted position and placed under foot in Revelation 12:10. It is also used in a similar way to cast away. This phrase is also

defined as: 'Having a structure completely taken apart as a means of destruction and the parts disposed of as useless

**Thrust**- To push or drive with force; as, to thrust anything with the hand or foot, or with an instrument.

**Thunder**- The sound which follows an explosion of electricity or lightning; the report of a discharge of electrical fluid, that is, of its passage from one cloud to another, or from a cloud to the earth, or from the earth to a cloud,. Thunder and lightning are significant manifestations of the power of God, and emblems of his presence, Ex 19:16; 1Sa 2:10; 12:17; Ps 18:13. Thunder is poetically called "the voice of the Lord" in the sublime description of a thunder- storm in Ps 29:11. See also Job 37:1- 5; 40:9; Jer 10:13. In illustration of Ps 29:9.

**Tidings**- News; advice; information; intelligence; account of what has taken place, and was not before known. I bring you good tidings of great joy, which shall be to all people. Luke 2.

**Tiberias, sea of**- Same as the Sea of Galilee. John's (Joh 6:1; 21:1) designation as better understood by the Gentile Romans, etc., whom he addressed.

**Time**- The fourth dimension of this physical reality, even though some people, ignorantly, deny that it is a dimension. We talk about past, present and future as categories of time.

**Timothy / Timotheus**- A preacher who took over Paul's ministry. Paul called him "son" because he received Paul's character in the ministry. Two books of the New Testament were written to him and are used to instruct all preachers.

**Tithe**- The tenth part of anything received. God says that the first tenth part belongs to Him and anyone who fails to deliver such to the church is robbing God and daring God to withhold His blessings. The tithes are designed to pay the expenses of church ministries.

**Tittle**- a point, (Mt 5:18; Lu 16:17), the minute point or stroke added to some letters of the Hebrew alphabet to distinguish them from others which they resemble; hence, the very least point'. In these Bible references we are told that God preserves every punctuation mark in the Bible, and the meaning of them. In the English KJV, the word "tittle" applies to the punctuation marks as the smallest characters of written language.

**Thy**- What belongs to you personally. This word is not "old English" but was created for the KJV- 1611 to convey the idea of a personal relationship with God. Religions lie

about it because they want to replace your personal relationship with their religious activities.

**TH / ST**– When these letters are added to the end of a verb, they change the verb from a one- time action to an on- going lifestyle action.

**Titus**- A preacher that Paul trained and one of only three that he called “son” because they each received Paul’s character in the ministry.

**Today**- The current day.

**Toil**- To labor; to work; to exert strength with pain and fatigue of body or mind, particularly of the body, with efforts of some continuance or duration. Master, we have toiled all night and caught nothing. Luke 5.

**Tooth**- A bony substance growing out of the jaws of animals, and serving as the instrument of mastication. The teeth are also very useful in assisting persons in the utterance of words, and when well- formed and sound, they are ornamental. The teeth of animals differ in shape, being destined for different offices. The front teeth in men and quadrupeds are called incisors, or incisive or cutting teeth; next to these are the pointed teeth, called canine or dog teeth; and on the sides of the jaws are the molar teeth or grinders.

**Tolerable**- That may be borne or endured; supportable, either physically or mentally. It shall be more tolerable for the land of Sodom and Gomorrah in the day of judgment, than for that city. Matt. 10.2.

**Token**- A sign; something intended to represent or indicate another thing or an event. Thus the rainbow is a token of God’s covenant established with Noah. The blood of the paschal lamb, sprinkled on the doors of the Hebrews, was a token to the destroying angel of God’s will that he should pass by those houses. Gen.9. Ex.12.

**Tomb**- A grave; a pit in which the dead body of a human being is deposited.

**Tongue**– A human language. These people who claim to speak an angel tongue are lying in order to get fools to be filled with pride and claim that they have some ‘special revelation’ which is actually a perversion of “the word of God”.

**Tooth**- A bony substance growing out of the jaws of animals, and serving as the instrument of mastication. The teeth are also very useful in assisting persons in the utterance of words, and when well formed and sound, they are ornamental.

**Torn**- Past- tense form of tear.

**Touch**- To come in contact with; to hit or strike against. He touched the hollow of his thigh. Gen. 32. Matt.9.

**Torment**- Extreme pain; anguish; the utmost degree of misery, either of body or mind.

**Toss**- Thrown upward suddenly or with a jerk; made to rise and fall suddenly.

**Tower**- Often referred to in scripture as a place of security, and also as a place of defense, on which watchmen were stationed. There were such on the walls of Jerusalem. Ps 48:12; 61:3; 2Ki 9:17. The term is also used symbolically: "the name of Jehovah is a strong tower" Pr 18:10.

**Town**- Originally, a walled or fortified place; a collection of houses enclosed with walls, hedges or pickets for safety. Rahab’s house was on the town wall. Josh. 2.

**Trade / Trading**- The act or business of carrying on commerce.

**Tradition**- The delivery of opinions, doctrines, practices, rites and customs from father to son, or from ancestors to posterity; the transmission of any opinions or practice from forefathers to descendants by oral communication, without written memorials. Thus, children derive their vernacular language chiefly from tradition.

**Trample**- To tread under foot; especially, to tread upon with pride, contempt, triumph or scorn. Neither cast ye your pearls before swine, lest they trample them under their feet. Matt. 7.

**Trance**- An ecstasy; a state in which the soul seems to have passed out of the body into celestial regions, or to be rapt into visions.

**Transfigured**- The figure is converted from one form to another. It is indicated that the conversion is done at the lowest level. Thus, when "Jesus" was "transfigured", His body was converted from a mortal human body to His immortal body that He wears now.

**Transgress**- To pass over or beyond any limit; to surpass. In a moral sense, to overpass any rule prescribed as the limit of duty; to break or violate a law, civil or moral. To transgress a divine law, is sin.

**Translate**- To remove or convey to heaven, as a human being, without death. By faith Enoch was translated, that he should not see death. Heb. 16.

**Traitor**- This signifies one who 'delivers up,' 'betrays.' It is applied to Judas, who delivered up his Lord. Lu 6:16. In 2Ti 3:4 some having a form of godliness are thus designated because they are secret agents of Satan.

**Travail**- To labor with pain; to toil such as to suffer the pangs of childbirth; to be in labor. Gen.35.

**Travel**- To journey; to ride to a distant place.

**Tread**- To set the foot.

**Treasure**- A great quantity of anything collected for future use. We have treasures in the field, of wheat and of barley, and of oil and of honey. Jer.41.

**Treasure in Heaven**- We are commanded to "lay up for yourselves treasure in heaven" by serving God's kingdom here in this physical life.

**Treasury**- A place to store treasure. In the Temple, there was a separate building so called. The name was given to the thirteen brazen chests, called "trumpets," from the form of the opening into which the offerings of the temple worshippers were put (Mt 27:6; Mr 12:41; Joh 8:20). These stood in the outer "court of the women." "Nine chests were for the appointed money- tribute and for the sacrifice- tribute, i.e., money- gifts instead of the sacrifices; four chests for freewill- offerings for wood, incense, temple decoration, and burnt- offerings"

**Tremble**- To shake involuntarily, as with fear, cold or weakness; to quake; to quiver; to shiver; to shudder.

**Tree**- The general name of the largest of the vegetable kind, consisting of a firm woody stem springing from woody roots, and spreading above into branches which terminate in leaves. A tree differs from a shrub principally in size.

**Tree of Knowledge**- A formalize set of knowledge such as the set of lessons to learn a language or Math. Religion was the first result of Adam and Eve eating the fruit of the tree of knowledge and religion tries to replace our ongoing personal relationship with God.

**Trench**- To cut or dig, as a ditch, a channel for water, or a long hollow in the earth.

**Trespass**- Literally, to pass beyond; hence primarily, to pass over the boundary line of another's land; to enter unlawfully upon the land of another. Trespasses and sins two different things. God treats trespasses and sins done by His children two different ways. While He ignores trespasses, He requires us to confess and forsake sins.

**Trial**- Any effort or exertion of strength for the purpose of ascertaining its effect, or what can be done.

**Tribe**- A family, race or series of generations, descending from the same progenitor and kept distinct, as in the case of the twelve tribes of Israel, descended from the twelve sons of Jacob.

**Tribulation**- to thrash, to beat. Severe affliction; distresses of life; vexations. In Scripture, it often denotes the troubles and distresses which proceed from persecution.

**Tribute**- An annual or stated sum of money or other valuable thing, paid by one prince or nation to another, either as an acknowledgment of submission, or as the price of peace and protection, or by virtue of some treaty.

**Trimmed**- Put in good order; dressed.

**Triumph**- Celebrating victory with pomp; vanquishing; rejoicing for victory.

**Troas**- A city of Mysia, S. of ancient Troy, opposite the island Tenedos.

**Trod**- Past- tense for tread. Jerusalem shall be trodden down by the Gentiles. Luke 21.

**Trouble**- To agitate; to disturb; to put into confused motion.

**Trumpet**- A wind instrument of music, used chiefly in war and military exercises.

**Trust**- Confidence; a reliance or resting of the mind on the integrity, veracity, justice, friendship or other sound principle of another person.

**Tried**- Past- tense of try.

**Trieth**- A lifestyle of trying.

**Truth**- Truth is defined by God. Truth is what God says is truth for this physical reality, the spiritual reality and everything else that is, even if we don't know about it. Truth is personified in Jesus Christ; anything less than 'absolute truth' is a lie.' Something that is true matches what God reveals in His unchanging Word. Please see the Word Study on [Truth](http://ljc1611kjv.com/1kjv.com), at [ljc1611kjv.com/1kjv.com](http://ljc1611kjv.com/1kjv.com), for more details.

**Tumult**- The commotion, disturbance or agitation of a multitude, usually accompanied with great noise, uproar and confusion of voices. What meaneth the noise of this tumult? 1 Sam 4.



**Turtledoves**- It is one of the smaller members of the group of birds which ornithologists usually call pigeons.

## **Twelve-**

**Twelve Disciples / Apostles**- The men trained by "Jesus" and left behind to start the church. Of the twelve, Judas Iscariot was a traitor. They are named in the note for Apostles, twelve (12)- .

**Tychicus**- He was a preacher trained and used by Paul but was not one of the three whom Paul called "son". Therefore, he did not have the same character as Paul.

**Try**- To examine; to make experiment on; to prove by experiment.

**Tyre**- the modern town, on a rocky peninsula, formerly an island. There is no doubt that, previous to the siege of the city by Alexander the Great, Tyre was situated on an island; but, according to the tradition of the inhabitants, there was a city on the mainland before there was a city on the island.

# U

**UN**- means not. When added to the front of an action verb it means that the action verb does not happen.

**Unbelief**- A failure to believe. What is called a 'head belief (a thought only in the head)', is truly "unbelief" because it does not motivate the person to act upon truer "belief".

**Unblameable**- Can not be blamed.

**Uncircumcised**- Physically this describes a male who has not been physically circumcised. (See the note for the word "circumcised" for more details.) The word "uncircumcised" is used symbolically, by the word of God, for who rely on faith to make them right with God.

**Uncircumcision**- What Jewish believers called Gentile believers in the early church.

**Unclean**- Physically and/or spiritually polluted from the world. Spiritually: influenced by devils; never doing the right religious practice; doing anything that would make us less than 100% committed to obeying God; accepting anything that is even questionable as being right; accepting all influences that corrupt.

**Unclean Spirits**- Devils.

**Uncleanness**- Foulness; dirtiness; filthiness. Want of ritual or ceremonial purity. Lev. 15. 3. Moral impurity; defilement by sin; sinfulness. Ezek. 36.4. Lewdness; incontinence. Col. 3. 2Peter 2.

**Uncorruptible**- That which cannot be corrupted. But incorruptible is the word now used.

**Undeified**- Not polluted spiritually. Only Christ can make us undeified and we must maintain our relationship with Him in order for Him to make that true for us.

**Understanding**- To have the same ideas as the person who speaks, or the ideas which a person intends to communicate. Spiritually, this is the mental ability which shows you how the Bible says in different places of "the word of God", come together because what God says in one part of "the word of God", matches what God says in another part of it.

**Understood**- The past- tense of understand. Once something is truly understood spiritually, it is not lost.

**Unfeigned**- Not fake.

**Ungodly**- A lost person whose lifestyle shows that they are lost and have nothing to do with obeying and trusting God. We must realize that we are truly ungodly before we can truly repent and turn to God for Him to change us.

**Unjust**- Not just. For example, unjust people claim to be saved, and may or may not be truly saved, but they are truly living like lost people.

**Unlearned**- Not learned; ignorant; not gained by study.

**Unleavened**- See the note for the word "leaven". Physically, this is what is called 'flat bread'. Spiritually, this means not corrupted by the lusts of the world.

**Unprofitable**- Not profitable. What is profitable physically probably is not profitable spiritually because physical profits are left behind at death unless we use physical profits to generate spiritual profits in God's kingdom while we are physically alive.

**Unsearchable**- That which cannot be searched. There are only five (5) things which "the word of God" calls "unsearchable" and all of them come from God and are available to saved people who truly serve God in this life.

**Unskillful**- Lacking in the skill which someone is trying to use.

**Unrighteousness**- Not righteous. See the note for the word righteous. Any of the four requirements to be righteous, which is missing, makes us unrighteous.

**Unruly**- Disregarding restraint; licentious; disposed to violate laws; turbulent; ungovernable; as an unruly youth.

**Unstable**- The opposite of stable. Please see that word.

**Unto** – up to and including.

**Unwise**- Not wise. Lacking the wisdom which comes from God.

**Upbraid**- To charge with something wrong or disgraceful; to reproach; to upbraid a man for his folly or his intemperance. God who giveth to all men liberally, and upbraideth not. James 1.

**Uproar**- Great tumult; violent disturbance and noise; bustle and clamor. The Jews who believed not - set all the city in an uproar. Act. 17.

**Urge**- To press; to push; to drive; to impel; to press the mind or will; to press by motives, arguments, persuasion or importunity.

**Usury**- Interest of any kind such as is commonly required in order to receive a loan.

**Utter**- To speak; to pronounce; to express; as, to utter words; to utter sounds; to divulge; to publish.

**Utterance**- The act of uttering words; pronunciation; manner of speaking.

**Uttermost**- utter and most. Extreme; being in the utterance furthest, greatest or highest degree; as the uttermost extent or end; the uttermost distress.

## V

**Vagabond**- A term used in scripture to signify a 'wanderer'. Ge 4:12,14; Ps 109:10.

**Vail**- Any kind of cloth which is used for intercepting the view and hiding something; as ladies wear over their face or the vail of the temple among the Israelites.

**Vain**- Empty; worthless; having no substance, value or importance. 1Peter 1.

**Value**- The real value of a thing is its utility, its power or capacity of procuring or producing good.

**Vanity**- Emptiness; want of substance to satisfy desire; uncertainty; inanity. Something that looks good outside but rotten on the inside.

**Vanities**- The plural form of the word vanity.

**Vanish**- To disappear; to pass from a visible to an invisible state; as, vapor vanishes from the sight by being dissipated. Darkness vanishes before the rising sun.

**Vapor / Vapour**- A visible fluid floating in the atmosphere.

**Variance**- Changeably; with alteration; in an inconstant or fickle manner.

**Vehement**- Carried away by the mind or force of passion.

**Veil of the Temple**- Hid the holy- of- holies until God ripped it from the top when "Jesus" died. This, symbolically, showed that access to God's throne was now available to anyone who came through our "Lord Jesus Christ".

**Vengeance**- See the note for revenge.

**Verily**- In truth; in fact; certainly. This has been verified but you personally need to also verify it because you will be judged by God for your belief of what is verified.

**Vessel**- A container to hold things such as liquids.

**Vesture**- Clothing; covering.

**Vex**- To irritate; to make angry by little provocations; to plague; to torment; to harass; to afflict.

**Vial**- A small container usually used to hold liquids.

**Vigilant**- Watchful; circumspect; attentive to discover and avoid danger, or to provide for safety.

**Village**- A small assemblage of houses, less than a town or city, and inhabited chiefly by farmers and other laboring people. In England, it is said that a village is distinguished from a town by the want of a market. In the United States, no such distinction exists, and any small assemblage of houses in the country is called a village.

**Victuals**- Food for human beings, prepared for eating; that which supports human life; provisions; meat; sustenance. We never apply this word to that on which beasts or birds feed, and we apply it chiefly to food for men when cooked or prepared for the table.

**Victory**- Conquest; the defeat of an enemy in battle, or of an antagonist in contest; a gaining of the superiority in war or combat. Victory supposes the power of an enemy or an antagonist to prove inferior to that of the victor.

**Vile**- Base; mean; worthless; despicable. The "word of God" calls our mortal body "vile" because of the corruption.

**Vine**- A plant that produces grapes. The "word of God" uses this, symbolically, to teach about the relationship between our "Lord Jesus Christ" and the saved.

**Vineyard**- The place where a farmer plants a vine and cares for it. The "word of God" uses this, symbolically, for the church.

**Violence**- Physical force; strength of action or motion; as the violence of a storm; the violence of a blow or of a conflict.

**Viper**- A type of poisonous snake. John the Baptist called the multitude who came to be baptized 'a brood of vipers,' and the Lord applies the same term to the scribes and Pharisees, showing the deadly character of their opposition. Job 20:16; Isa 30:6; 59:5; Mt 3:7; 12:34; 23:33; Lu 3:7; Ac 28:3.

**Virgin**- Someone who has not experienced sex. This applies to both sexes. It is also used symbolically for those in separation from evil. Paul had espoused the saints at Corinth to one husband to 'present them as a chaste virgin to Christ.' 2Co 11:2: cf. Re 14:4.

**Vinegar**- This was a thin sour wine, that might be called either wine or vinegar, there being other words for wine of a better quality. It was the drink of the reapers and of the Roman soldiers. It is represented as intoxicating, and as irritating to the teeth.

**Virtue**- Bravery valor; Strength; that substance or quality of physical bodies, by which they act and produce effects on other bodies.

**Visible**- Perceivable by the eye; that can be seen.

**Vision**- By means of visions God often vouchsafed to make known His will. When Samuel was a child, before the word of Jehovah was revealed to him, for a time 'there was no open vision.' 1Sa 3:1,15. With the prophets they were frequently employed: more than twenty times we read of them in Daniel. In the future when the Spirit will be poured out, Israel's sons and daughters will prophesy; the old men will dream dreams, and the young men will see visions. Joe 2:28; Ac 2:17. The book of Revelation is a series of visions. Re 1:2.

**Visit**- Waited on; attended; inspected; subjected to sufferings; favored with relief or mercy.

**Voice**- Sound or audible noise uttered by the mouth, either of human beings or of other animals.

**Voice from Heaven**- We see this exact phrase nine (9) times in the Bible and sixteen times total, when we also consider other phrases with the same message. Each time it is God the Father speaking. Please see the note for Luke 3:21- 22, at [ljc1611kjv.com](http://ljc1611kjv.com) [1kjv.com](http://1kjv.com), for those references.

**Void**- Empty; vacant; not occupied with any visible matter; as a void space or place. 1Kings 22.

**Volume**- Primarily a roll, as the ancients wrote on long strips of bark, parchment or other material, which they formed into rolls or folds. Of such volumes, Ptolemy's library in Alexandria contained 3 or 700,000.

**Voluntary**- Acting by choice or spontaneously; acting without being influenced or impelled by another.

## W

**Wag**- To move one way and the other with quick turns; to move a little way, and then turn the other way; as, to wag the head. Every one that passeth thereby shall be astonished, and wag his head. Jer. 18. Matt 27.

**Wages**- A recompense for work done.

**Wail**- Loud weeping; violent lamentation.

**Wait**- To stay or rest in expectation; to stop or remain stationary, till the arrival of some person or event. Thus we say, I went to the place of meeting, and there waited an hour for the moderator or chairman.

**Waiting**- Staying in expectation.

**WALK**- small repeated steps. Used spiritually when "the word of God" commands us to "walk by faith", which means that even our small every- day things, which we do, are to be controlled by faith in God's word. We are to obey believing God will obey our obedience.

**Wallow**- To roll the body on the earth, in mire, or on other substance; to tumble and roll in water. Swine wallow in the mire.

**Wander**- To travel over without a certain course.

**Want**- Lack; be deficient. De 28:48.

**Wanton**- Licentiousness; negligence of restraint.

**Warm**- Having heat in a moderate degree; not cold; as warm blood; warm milk.

**Warn**- To give notice of approaching or probable danger or evil, that it may be avoided; to caution against anything that may prove injurious.

**Warfare / War**- To lead a military life; to carry on continual wars.

**Washing**- The act of cleansing with water; ablution. Hebrews 9. Spiritual removal of sin and the influence of sin by Jesus Christ.

**Waste**- To diminish by gradual dissipation or loss. Thus, disease wastes the patient; sorrows waste the strength and spirits.

**Water**- The basic liquid of life. Used symbolically for cleansing including spiritually cleansing. Also used symbolically for physical birth as a woman's water breaking in physical birth.

**Watch**- Attention without sleep and with close observation such as a military guard.

**Wave**- A moving swell or volume of water; usually, a swell raised and driven by wind.

**Waxed**- To pass from one state to another; to become; as, to wax strong; to wax warm or cold; to wax feeble; to wax hot; to wax old; to wax worse and worse.

**Way**- How we get from where we are at to our destination.

**Way of the Lord**- Please see the note for Mark 1:3, at [ljc1611kjb.com1kjb.com](http://ljc1611kjb.com1kjb.com), for many references to this phrase found in "the word of God". This is how we are to receive God's blessings such as salvation.

**Way Side**- A path on the side of a field. Used spiritually, in a parable, to represent the lost person with a hard heart that refuses to believe.

**Weak**- Having little physical strength; feeble. Children are born weak; men are rendered weak by disease.

**Wealth**- Prosperity; external happiness. Riches; large possessions of money, goods or land; that abundance of worldly estate which exceeds the estate of the greater part of the community; affluence; opulence.

**Weapon**- Any instrument of offense; anything used or designed to be used in destroying or annoying an enemy.

The spiritual weapons are different than what natural men imagine.

**Wear**- To waste or impair by rubbing or attrition; to lessen or diminish by time, use or instruments. A current of water often wears a channel in limestone.

**Weary**- Having the strength much exhausted by toil or violent exertion; tired; fatigued. It should be observed however that this word expresses less than tired, particularly when applied to a beast; as a tired horse.

**Wearied**- Past- tense of weary.

**Weather**- The state of the air or atmosphere with respect to heat or cold, wetness or dryness, calm or storm, clearness or cloudiness, and the like; as warm weather; cold weather; wet weather; dry weather; calm weather; tempestuous weather; fair weather; cloudy weather; hazy weather, and the like.

**Weep**- To express sorrow, grief or anguish by outcry. This is the original sense. But in present usage, to manifest and express grief by outcry or by shedding tears. They all wept sore, and fell on Paul's neck, and kissed him. Acts 20.

**Weight**- Please see the note for John 6:7, at [ljc1611kjb.com1kjb.com](http://ljc1611kjb.com1kjb.com), for various Biblical measurements.

**Weighty**- Having great weight; heavy; ponderous; as a weighty body. Important; forcible; momentous; adapted to turn the balance in the mind, or to convince; as weighty reasons; weighty matters; weighty considerations or arguments.

**West**- In strictness, that point of the horizon where the sun sets at the equinox, or any point in a direct line between the spectator or other object, and that point of the horizon; or west is the intersection of the prime vertical with the horizon, on that side where the sun sets. West is directly opposite to east, and one of the cardinal points.

**Whale**- A mammal that lives in the sea. Whales have been caught with men, or remains of men, in their bellies. So, the claim that a whale could not swallow Jonas is a lie.

**What then?**- What is the conclusion based upon what came before this question.

**What we have in Christ**- Please see the note for Ephesians 1:3- LJC, at [ljc1611kjb.com1kjb.com](http://ljc1611kjb.com1kjb.com), for a list of blessings given only to saved people who maintain their ongoing personal relationship with Christ.

**Wheat**- One of the earliest cultivated grains. In the parable it is used by the Lord as representing the children of the kingdom, the fruit of the good seed that He was sowing on the earth, in contrast to the tares, or darnel, which Satan secretly sowed among the good seed.

**Whence**- From what place. Whence and what art thou?

**Whereupon**- Upon which; for which reason Le 11:35; Heb 9:18.

**Wherefore**— What follows this word is result will see everywhere from what precedes this word.

**Whether**- Which of two choices.

**Which**- adds a qualifier. What follows the word 'which' qualifies (limits) what preceded the word 'which'.

**Whisperers**- A tattler; one who tells secrets; a conveyer of intelligence secretly. A backbiter; one who slanders secretly. Proverbs 16.

**Whit**- A point; a jot; the smallest part or particle imaginable. He is not a whit the wiser for experience.

**White**- Being in the color of pure snow; snowy; not dark; as white paper. In Physics, we are told that this is a combination of all colors. Symbolically, it is the color of a symbol of purity (2Ch 5:12; Ps 51:7; Isa 1:18; Re 3:18; 7:14). Our Lord, at his transfiguration, appeared in raiment "white as the light" (Mt 17:2, etc.).

**Whither**- While the dictionaries do not make a difference between this word and the word "where", I believe that the Biblical difference is that the word "where" is used for a one-time occurrence and the word whither is used for an ongoing occurrence. That is: continually seeking many places or going to another place and remaining there, not returning.

**Whole**- All; total; containing the total amount or number, or the entire thing; as the whole earth; the whole world; the whole solar system; the whole army; the whole nation.

**Wholesome**- Tending to promote health; favoring health; salubrious; as wholesome air or diet; a wholesome climate.

**Whore**- A harlot; a courtesan; a concubine; a prostitute. To have unlawful sexual commerce; to practice lewdness.

**Whoremonger / Whoremaster**- A person who employs whores. Also, used symbolically for anyone who practices lewdness.

**Wicked**- Departure from the rules of the divine law; evil disposition or practices; immorality; crime; sin; sinfulness; corrupt manners Wickedness generally signifies evil practices. Dictionaries wrongly claim that only lost people can be wicked.

**Wicked Heart**- When our innermost being wants to do wicked things, we have a wicked heart. We are told many places that our heart can be wicked, is naturally wicked and that the Godly don't have a wicked heart.

**Wide**- Broad; having a great or considerable distance or extent between the sides; opposed to narrow; as wide cloth; a wide table; a wide highway; a wide bed; a wide hall or entry. in this use, wide is distinguished from long, which refers to the extent or distance between the ends. Please see the note for John 6:7, at [ljc1611kjv.com1kjv.com](http://ljc1611kjv.com1kjv.com), for various Biblical measurements.

**Widow**- A woman whose husband is dead. The widow indeed, i.e. destitute, and therefore to be relieved by the church, not having younger relatives, whose duty it is to relieve them.

**Wife**- A legally married woman. The ordinance of marriage was sanctioned in Paradise (Ge 2:24; Mt 19:4- 6).

**Wives**- Plural of the word wife.

**Wild**- Inhabiting the forest or open field; hence, not tamed or domesticated; as a wild boar; a wild ox; a wild cat; a wild bee.

**Wilderness**- Not denoting a barren desert but a district or region suitable for pasturing sheep and cattle (Ps 65:12; Isa 42:11; Jer 23:10; Joe 1:19; 2:22); an uncultivated place.

**Will**- That faculty of the mind by which we determine either to do or forbear an action; the faculty which is exercised in deciding, among two or more objects, which we shall embrace or pursue.

**Will of God**- The will belonging to God. What he wants us to do in our life so that He is justified in blessing us.

**Wilt**- The will applied at a lifestyle level. That is: a decision of will which does not change throughout the life.

**Wind**- The primary sense is to move, flow, rush or drive along. Air in motion with any degree of velocity, indefinitely; a current of air. When the air moves moderately, we call it a light wind, or a breeze; when with more velocity, we call it a fresh breeze, and when with violence, we call it a gale, storm or tempest.

**Window**- Properly only an opening in a house for the admission of light and air, covered with lattice- work, which might be opened or closed (2Ki 1:2; Ac 20:9). The spies in Jericho and Paul at Damascus were let down from the windows of houses abutting on the town wall (Jos 2:15; 2Co 11:33).

**Wine**- This word causes a lot of doctrinal argument because religious sinners use the way of Satan to ignore context of "the word of God" in order to justify sin. Rightly, some point out that there are six (6) words in the 'original languages' which are interpreted to 'wine' in English. And they vary in meaning from 'freshly squeezed grape juice' to 'highly intoxicating drink'. What almost everyone ignores is the fact that "the fruit of the vine" will be drunk in Heaven and that none of those six (6) words match what is drunk in Heaven. Please see the note for John 2:1, at [ljc1611kjv.com](http://ljc1611kjv.com) [1kjv.com](http://1kjv.com), for the true interpretation of that miracle.

**Winebibber**- Habitual wine- drinkers. The accusation was falsely brought against Jesus of being "a gluttonous man and a winebibber," because, unlike John, He ate and drank with others.

**Winepress**- What was used to squeeze juice from grapes. From the scanty notices contained in the Bible we gather that, the wine- presses of the Jews consisted of two receptacles of vats placed at different elevations, in the upper one of which the grapes were trodden, while the lower one received the expressed juice. The two vats are mentioned together only in Joel 3:13.

**Wing**- Wings were given for rapid motion.. The limb of a fowl by which it flies. In a few species of fowls, the wings do not enable them to fly; as is the case with the dodo, ostrich, great auk, and penguin; but in the two former, the wings assist the fowls in running. Used as a symbol of protection. Under 'the shadow of God's wings' is referred to in the Psalms; and the Lord said He would often have gathered Israel as a hen gathereth her chickens under her wings, but they would not. Ps 17:8; 36:7; 57:1; Mt 23:37; etc.

**Wink**- To close and open the eyelids. Used symbolically for something that God chooses to overlook. The former times of ignorance God 'overlooked,' but now commandeth all men everywhere to repent, for a day has been appointed when the Lord Jesus will judge the habitable world in righteousness. Ac 17:30.

**Winter**- The cold season of the year. Astronomically considered, winter commences in northern latitudes when the sun enters Capricorn, or at the solstice about the 21st of December, and ends at the equinox in March; but in

ordinary discourse, the three winter months are December, January, and February.

**Wiped**- Rubbed for cleaning; cleaned by rubbing; cleared away; effaced.

**Wisdom**- The right use or exercise of knowledge; the choice of laudable ends, and of the best means to accomplish them. There are three mental spiritual gifts called: knowledge, wisdom and understanding. People confuse the three.

**Wise**- People who use wisdom correctly.

**Wish**- To have a desire, or strong desire, either for what is or is not supposed to be obtainable.

**Wist / Wit**- According to dictionaries, these two (2) words have the same meaning. However, the Bible usage of "wit" is: 'knowledge gained from being a witness' where, the true definition of the word "wist" is: 'knowledge gained from reasoning'.

**Witchcraft**- The practices of witches; sorcery; enchantments; intercourse with the devil.

**Withal**- With and all. With the rest; together with; likewise; at the same time.

**Withdraw**- With and draw. To take back; to take from. It is impossible that God should withdraw his presence from anything.

**Withdrew**- Past- tense form of withdraw.

**Withered**- Faded; dried; shrunk.

**Withhold**- With and hold. To hold back; to restrain; to keep from action.

**Without Cause**- A reaction when there was no causing action.

**Witness**- Someone who is qualified to testify in court and is available to do so if the court requests. With the exception of an 'expert witness', the person must have first- person knowledge about what they testify.

**Witness, Two or Three**- Under God's law, there must be two or three witnesses for something to be judged true. If something is said, literally, in at least two places within "the word of God", then it is something that is part of God's law and we must accept what is literally said since we will be judged by God for our obedience or disobedience. If it is only said once, or is said indirectly, then we can disagree about it and not be judged by God.

**Witnesses given by Jesus to show that He**

**is God**- Please see the note for John 5:1, at [ljc1611kjv.com1kjv.com](http://ljc1611kjv.com1kjv.com). for legal evidences, offered by Jesus, to prove that he was/is the "Son of God".

**Wolf**- The well-known animal, described in scripture as 'ravaging,' and seeking its prey in the evening. They are very destructive among the sheep, worrying and destroying more than they can eat. This makes the wolf a fit emblem of the wicked, who molest the sheep and lambs of God's flock, and even creep in among them.

**Wolves**- Plural form of the word wolf.

**Woman**- The female of the human race, grown to adult years. She was originally created by God to be a "helpmeet" to her husband.

**Womb**- The uterus or matrix of a female; that part where the young of an animal is conceived and nourished till its birth.

**Wonder**- That emotion which is excited by novelty, or the presentation to the sight or mind, of something new, unusual, strange, great, extraordinary, or not well understood; something that arrests the attention by its novelty, grandeur or inexplicableness. Wonder expresses less than astonishment, and much less than amazement. It differs from admiration, in not being necessarily accompanied with love, esteem or approbation, nor directed to persons.

**Wonderful**- Adapted to excite wonder or admiration; exciting surprise; strange; astonishing. Job 42.

**Wont**- Custom; habit; use.

**Wood**- The substance of trees; the hard substance which composes the body of a tree and its branches, and which is covered by the bark. It is used, symbolically, for something of little spiritual value.

**Wool**- Made from the hair of sheep. One of the first material used for making woven cloth (Le 13:47- 48,52,59; 19:19).

**Word / Word of God**- Word that belongs to God. What we will each be judged for our level of obedience to. When used lower-case, it speaks of the written book. When used uppercase, it speaks of our "Lord Jesus Christ".

**Word of the Lord**- A sub-set of "the word of God" which contains all that will be used to judge us. "The word of God" includes things like the lies of Satan which we are to not obey.

**Worm**- In common usage, any small creeping animal, or reptile, either entirely without feet, or with very short ones, including a great variety of animals of different classes and orders. Used symbolically for what will eat people in Hell from the inside out even while what is eaten grows back.

**Worse**- More evil; more bad or ill; more depraved and corrupt; in a moral sense.

**Worship**- The personal recognition and (often verbal) expression of the superiority of another being in relationship to self. True worship is not a vague general expression but expresses specific ways that the superiority is recognized. While devils and men desire worship, all proper worship is reserved for the only true God. Please see the Word Study, at [ljc1611kjv.com1kjv.com](http://ljc1611kjv.com1kjv.com), for more about this word.

**Workman**- Work and man. Any man employed in labor, whether in tillage or manufactures.

**Works**- To move, or to labor. Our everlasting rewards are according to the works which we do for God's kingdom while in this physical life.

**Workers**- People who produce works.

**World**- All of the people in this physical reality

**Wormwood**- A plant, the artemisia. It has a bitter nauseous taste. It is also used, symbolically, for judgment that God will bring upon His people who turn to idolatry.

**Worth**- Value; that quality of a thing which renders it useful, or which will produce an equivalent good in some other thing.

**Worthily**- In a manner suited to; deservedly; according to merit.

**Worthy**- Deserving; such as merits; having worth or excellence.

**Woe**- A warning of judgment to those who were privileged but failed their responsibilities.

**Wot**- To know; to be aware.

**Wound**- A breach of the skin and flesh of an animal, or of the bark and wood of a tree, or of the bark and substance of other plants, caused by violence or external force. To hurt by violence.

**Wrap**- Wound; folded; enclosed.

**Wrath**- Violent anger; vehement exasperation; indignation.

**Wrest**- A form of fighting. To twist or extort by violence; to pull or force from by violent wringing or twisting; as, to wrest an instrument from another's hands.

**Wretched**- Very miserable; sunk into deep affliction or distress, either from want, anxiety or grief.

**Write**- To form by a pen on paper or other material, or by a graver on wood or stone; as, to write the characters called letters; To write figures.

**Written**- The past- tense form of write. The phrase "it is written" always gives us a reference to "the word of God".

**Wrong**- Not physically right or not spiritually right; not fit or suitable.

**Wroth**- Very angry; much exasperated.

**Wrought**- Worked; formed by work or labor; as wrought iron. Effected; performed. She hath wrought a good work upon me. Matthew 26.

Y

**Ye**- Each and every one of you personally. This is contrasted with the word 'you', which is a group identifier. This word is not "old English" but was created for the KJV-1611 to convey the idea of a personal relationship with God. Religions lie about it because they want to replace your personal relationship with their religious activities.

**Yea**- Same as the word yes only with a stronger expression of assent.

**Year**- Among the ancient Egyptians the year consisted of twelve months of thirty days each, with five days added to make it a complete revolution of the earth round the sun. The Jews reckoned the year in two ways, (1) according to a sacred calendar, in which the year began about the time of the vernal equinox, with the month Abib; and (2) according to a civil calendar, in which the year began about the time of the autumnal equinox, with the month Nisan

**Yield**- To produce, as land, stock or funds; to give in return for labor, or as profit.

**Yoke**- A piece of timber, hollowed or made curving near each end, and fitted with bows for receiving the necks of

oxen; by which means two are connected for drawing. It was frequently used metaphorically for subjection, e.g. 1Ki 12:4,9- 11; Isa 9:4; Jer 5:5. Hence an iron yoke represents an unusually galling bondage. De 28:48; Jer 28:13.

**Yonder**- At a distance within view. When we use This word, we often point the hand or direct the eye to the place or object.

**You**- Identifies a group of people such as all who are in a church.

**Young**- Not having been long born; being in the first part of life; not old; used of animals; as a young child; a young man; a young fawn.

**Younger**- Not so old as another.

**Your**- What belongs to a group of people such as the revelation in "the word of God".

**Youth**- The part of life that succeeds to childhood. In a general sense, youth denotes the whole early part of life, from infancy to manhood; but it is not unusual to divide the stages of life into infancy, childhood, youth, and manhood.

Z

**Zabulon / Zebulun**- The sixth son of Jacob and Leah, who was his God- given wife. This name is used for the son, his descendants and the part of the promised land given to his descendants.

**Zebedee**- A fisherman of Galilee; father of James and John. In easy circumstances, for he owned a boat and hired servants (Mt 4:21; Mr 1:20). Salome his wife ministered to Jesus (Mt 27:55- 56; Mr 15:40- 41).

**Zeal**- Passionate ardor in the pursuit of anything. In general, zeal is an eagerness of desire to accomplish or obtain some object, and it may be manifested either in favor of any person or thing, or in opposition to it, and in a good or bad cause. Zeal, the blind conductor of the will.